The cover of the book "Beginner's Korean: Beginner's Series" by Jeyseon & Kangjin Lee. The book is part of the Hippocrene Beginner's Series and includes an audio CD. The ISBN numbers are also mentioned on the cover.
Beginner’s Korean
with 2 Audio CDs
HIPPOCRENE BEGINNER’S SERIES

Arabic
Armenian
Assyrian
Basque
Bulgarian (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Chinese (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Czech
Dari (with 1 enclosed CD)
Finnish
Gaelic
Greek (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Hungarian
Iraqi Arabic (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Irish (with 1 enclosed CD)
Japanese (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Lithuanian
Norwegian (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Persian
Polish (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Serbo-Croatian
Shona
Sicilian
Slovak
Swedish (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Vietnamese
Yoruba (with 2 enclosed CDs)

Also Available

Intermediate Chinese (with 1 enclosed CD)
Mastering Arabic (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Mastering Polish (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Mastering Spanish (with 2 enclosed CDs)
Table of Contents

Introduction: About the Korean Language 1

The Korean Alphabet & Pronunciation Guide 5

The Romanization of Korean 9

Reading Exercise 15

Abbreviation Table 17

LESSON 1: 인사 19
Greetings

LESSON 2: 소개하기 45
Asking about Someone & Telling about Yourself

LESSON 3: 날씨와 시간 71
Asking Directions

LESSON 4: 날씨와 시간 101
Asking the Date, Day, and Time

LESSON 5: 전화 걸기 131
Making a Telephone Call

LESSON 6: 날씨와 여가활동 161
Weather and Leisure Activities
Introduction:

About the Korean Language

Korean is the native language of 67 million people living on the Korean peninsula, as well as the heritage language of 5.6 million Diaspora Koreans.

The Korean language consists of seven geographically based dialects. Despite the differences in dialects, Korean is relatively homogeneous, with strong mutual intelligibility among speakers from different areas. This is because the mass media and formal education are based on standard speech and strongly contribute to the standardization of the language.

The closest sister language of Korean is Japanese. However, they are not mutually intelligible and their relationship is very weak. Some scholars claim that Korean and Japanese are remotely related to the Altaic languages, such as native Manchu, Mongolian, and the Turkic languages.

Although Korean and Japanese are geographically, historically, and culturally close to China, Korean and Japanese are not part of the same language family as Chinese, and therefore are not grammatically similar to Chinese. However, both Korean and Japanese have borrowed a large number of Chinese words and characters throughout the course of their long historical contact with various Chinese dynasties, and those borrowed Chinese words and characters have become an integral part of the Korean and Japanese vocabularies.

Since the end of World War II, Korean people have been in contact with many foreign countries and have borrowed thousands of words, the majority from English. During the 35-year occupation of Korea by Japan, a considerable number of Japanese words were also borrowed.
The Korean vocabulary has three components: native words and affixes (approximately 35 percent), Sino-Korean words (approximately 60 percent), and loanwords (approximately 5 percent). Native words denote daily necessities (food, clothing, and shelter), locations, basic actions, activities, states of being, lower-level numbers, body parts, natural objects, animals, and so forth.

Due to their ideographic and monosyllabic nature, Chinese characters are easily combined and recombined to coin new terms as new cultural objects and concepts are created. Most institutional terms, traditional cultural terms, personal names, and place names are Sino-Korean words. There are 14,000 loanwords in Korean, almost 9 percent from English. Most of those loanwords are commonly used, facilitating, to a certain extent, cross-cultural communication.

Korean is often called a situation-oriented language in that contextually or situationally understood elements, including subject and object, are omitted more frequently than not. Therefore, inserting the pronoun “you” or “I” in expressions such as 안녕하세요? (an-nyeong-ha-se-yo?) / How are you?, or 고맙습니다 (go-map-sum-ni-da) / thank you, would sound awkward in normal contexts.

Korean is a “macro-to-micro” language. The larger context of something is presented first, followed by gradually smaller contexts, ending with the individual context. For example, when referring to someone by name, Koreans say or write the family name first and the given name second, which may be followed by a title. An address is given by first indicating the country, followed by, in descending order, the province, city, street, house number, and, finally, the name of the addressee. Koreans indicate a date with the year first, the month second, and the day last.

Korean may be called an honorific language, in that one uses different words and phrases depending on the status of the person being discussed or to whom one is speaking. Differences such as age, family relationship, and social status are systematically encoded in the structure and use of Korean. A small number of commonly used words have two forms, one plain and one honorific. The honorific forms are used with an adult of equal or greater status, such as an elder, whereas the plain forms are reserved for another of lesser status. There are also humble verbs used to express deference to an elder or one of greater status.

Korean has an extensive set of address and reference terms that are sensitive to degrees of social stratification and distance between the speaker and addressee and between the speaker and referent. The most frequently used terms for a social superior or an adult distant equal are composed of an occupational title followed by the gender-neutral honorific suffix -님 (nim), such as 교수님 (gyo-su-nim) / Professor.

This may be preceded by the full or family name. There are several titles. The most frequently used among younger co-workers or when speaking to a child or adolescent is the gender-neutral noun -씨 (ssi). This noun is affixed to one’s full or given name. When speaking or referring to a child, use either the given name alone or the full name without a title. When addressing a child by a given name, the name is followed by a particle. When the name ends with a consonant, the particle is 이 (a). When it ends with a vowel, the particle is 아 (ya).

In Korean, first person pronouns—the English “I” and “we”—have both plain and humble forms. The plain singular form is 나 (na) and the plain plural is 우리 (u-ri), while the humble singular is 저 (jeo) and the humble plural is 저희 (jeo-hui). The humble forms are used when speaking with an elder or an adult of higher social status. Second person pronouns, the equivalent of the English “you”, are used only when speaking with children. The singular form is 너 (neo) and the plural is 너희 (neo-hui). When speaking with an adult, one must address them with their name and title. For example: 김선생님 (gim-seon-saeng-nim) / you, teacher Kim.

Korean is currently written using both Chinese characters and the Korean phonetic alphabet known as 한글 (hanguel/hangul). Chinese characters were used exclusively in written Korean until 1443, when King Sejong the Great, the fourth king of the 조선 (jo-seon)
Dynasty, created 한글 with his court scholars. 한글 has continued to enjoy increasing favor over Chinese characters. The latter’s contemporary usage is largely restricted to newspapers and scholarly books, and even there it is limited. Chinese characters, however, are very useful in differentiating between words with identical pronunciation and 한글 spelling.

There are considerable differences between the Korean and English languages. Such differences range from pronunciation and grammar to vocabulary principles and writing systems to underlying traditions and culture. These differences make Korean one of the most challenging languages for a native English speaker to learn. We hope this book will help to make it one of the most rewarding.

Korean Alphabet & Pronunciation Guide

The Letters of the 한글 (Hangul/han-geul) Alphabet and Their Pronunciation

The current 한글 alphabet has 40 characters: 19 consonants, 8 vowels, and 13 diphthongs. A diphthong combines two separate vowel sounds. In English, examples include the “ou” sound in the word “out” and the “eo” sound in the word “people”.

Korean allows a three-way voiceless contrast (plain, aspirate, and tense) in plosive consonants, and a two-way (plain and tense) or no contrast in fricative consonants. In addition to these consonants, Korean has the liquid consonant ㄹ, which is pronounced as r in initial position or between vowels, and three nasal consonants. The Korean consonant chart is illustrated below.

There are four kinds of consonants in Korean: plosive, fricative, liquid, and nasal. Plosive consonants have three kinds of contrasts: plain, aspirate, and tense. Twelve consonants are plosive, with four in each contrast. There are 3 fricative consonants, two using the plain contrast and the other using the tense contrast. The one liquid consonant is ㄹ, although it is pronounced as r when it begins a word or appears between two vowels. There are three nasal consonants, but they are not distinguished by contrasts. A pronunciation chart, which also indicates the proper tongue position when making the consonant sounds, appears below:
Consonants change sounds depending on their position in a word. The 한국어 spellings, however, do not change.

In standard Korean, there are 8 vowels and 13 diphthongs. The vowels are grouped into categories of front and back. Back vowels are further categorized as round and unround. (All front vowels are unround.) The Korean vowel chart, which indicates both these divisions and the tongue position during pronunciation, is below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tongue Position</th>
<th>Front Unround</th>
<th>Front Round</th>
<th>Back Unround</th>
<th>Back Round</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are two semi-vowels, y and w, and they combine with 8 vowels to make 13 diphthongs. The Korean diphthong chart is represented below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syllable Blocks in Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The han-gul letters are combined into syllable blocks. The syllable blocks are constructed out of what is referred to as consonant, vowel, and diphthong positions. A square syllable block has the initial consonant position followed by a vowel or diphthong position. In the final consonant position, one or two consonants may occur. If a syllable does not begin with a consonant, the syllable block must have the letter ㅗ in the initial consonant position. The letter ㅗ is silent and functions as a zero consonant in the initial position of a syllable block.

If the vowel letter in the syllable block contains one or two long vertical strokes, it is written to the right of the initial consonant letter (e.g. ㅏ[na], ㅐ[gye]). If the vowel letter in the syllable block
contains only a long horizontal stroke, the vowel letter is written below the initial consonant letter (e.g. 무 [mu], 고 [gyo]). If a diphthong letter contains a long horizontal stroke and a long vertical stroke, the initial consonant letter occurs in the upper left corner (e.g. 졸 [gwi], 노 [nwa]). When a syllable ends with consonants, they occur beneath the vowel letter (e.g. 됨 [bwat], 김 [gim], 희 [heuk, heulk]). Final consonants can be all single consonant letters and the following two-letter combinations: ᵇ (kk), ᶇ (ss), ᵇ (ks), ᶉ (nj), ᶅ (nh), ᶈ (lk), ᵉ (lm), ᶐ (lp), ᶑ (ls), ᶒ (lt'), ᵑ (lp'), ᶓ (lh), ᶕ (ps). When writing the letters in syllable blocks, they should be balanced to fill the space.

To demonstrate the construction of a word in written Korean, let us consider the word 학급 (han-geul). It has two syllable blocks, 학 (han) and 급 (geul). In the first syllable block, 학 (han) combine like this:

한 (han)

In the second syllable block, the letters 급 (geul) combine to form:

급 (geul)

Note how, in accordance with the rules outlined above, the initial consonant 학 (han) appears with 급 (geul) to its right and the final consonant 급 (geul) below. With the syllable block 급 (geul), note how the initial consonant 급 (geul) is placed first, with the vowel 급 (geul), which is written as a horizontal stroke, below it, and the final consonant 급 (geul) appearing below the vowel.

---

The Romanization of Korean

(Korean Ministry of Culture and Tourism proclamation No. 2000-8)

1. Basic principles of romanization

(1) Romanization is based on standard Korean pronunciation.
(2) Symbols other than Roman letters are avoided to the greatest extent possible.

2. Summary of the romanization system

(1) Vowels are transcribed as follows:

Simple Vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowel</th>
<th>Romanization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ㅏ/а</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅑ/я</td>
<td>yae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅓ/е</td>
<td>eo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅢ/и</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅗ/о</td>
<td>eu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅘ/э</td>
<td>eu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅝ/э</td>
<td>eu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅞ/э</td>
<td>eu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅐ/ае</td>
<td>ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅔ/е</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅚ/оe</td>
<td>oe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅟ/уй</td>
<td>wi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Diphthongs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowel</th>
<th>Romanization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ㅑ/я</td>
<td>yeo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅢ/и</td>
<td>yu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅘ/э</td>
<td>yae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅝ/э</td>
<td>ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅞ/э</td>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅘ/э</td>
<td>wae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅛ/у</td>
<td>wo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅝ/э</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅞ/э</td>
<td>ui</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1: -и is transcribed as ui, even when pronounced as i.

Note 2: Long vowels are not reflected in romanization.

(2) Consonants are transcribed as follows:

Plosives (Stops)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonant</th>
<th>Romanization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ㄱ/р</td>
<td>g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄲ/рр</td>
<td>kk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄴ/н</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄷ/д</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄸ/тт</td>
<td>tt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄹ/л</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅁ/м</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅂ/в</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅃ/бб</td>
<td>pp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅍ/п</td>
<td>p</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Affricates and Fricatives
\[ j / \; jj / \; ch / \; s / \; ss / \; h \]

Nasals and Liquids
[ n / m / ng / r, l ]

Note 1: The sounds \( n, \; s \), and \( l \) are transcribed respectively as \( g \), \( d \), and \( b \) when they appear before a vowel. They are transcribed as \( k \), \( t \), and \( p \) when followed by another consonant or forming the final sound of a word.

Note 2: \( m \) is transcribed as \( r \) when followed by a vowel, and \( l \) when followed by a consonant or when appearing at the end of a word. \( n \) is transcribed as \( ll \).

3. Special provisions for romanization

(1) When Korean sound values change as in the following cases, the results of those changes are romanized.

1) The case of assimilation of adjacent consonants
2) The case of the epenthetic [inserted within the body of a word] \( \sim \) and \( \equiv \)
3) Cases of palatalization
4) Cases where \( n, \; s \), \( l \), and \( m \) are adjacent to \( r \)

However, aspirated sounds are not reflected in case of nouns where \( m \) follows \( n \), \( s \), and \( l \).

Note: Tense (or glottalized) sounds are not reflected in cases where morphemes [the smallest part of a word that has meaning] are compounded.

(2) When there is the possibility of confusion in pronunciation, a hyphen "—" may be used.

(3) The first letter is capitalized in proper names.

(4) Personal names are written by family name first, followed by a space and the given name. In principle, syllables in given names are not separated by hyphen, but the use of a hyphen between syllables is permitted.

1) Assimilated sound changes between syllables in given names are not transcribed.
2) Romanization of family names will be determined separately.

(5) Administrative units, such as do, si, gun, gu, eup, myeon, ri, dong, and ga are transcribed respectively as do, si, gun, gu, eup, myeon, ri, dong, and ga, and are preceded by a hyphen. Assimilated sound changes before and after the hyphen are not reflected in romanization.

Note: Terms for administrative units such as si, gun, eup may be omitted.

(6) Names of geographic features, cultural properties, and manmade structures may be written without hyphens.

(7) Proper names such as personal names and those of companies may continue to be written as they have been previously.

(8) When it is necessary to convert romanized Korean back to hangul in special cases such as in academic articles, romanization is done according to hangul spelling and not pronunciation. Each hangul letter is romanized as explained in section 2 except that \( n, \; s \), \( l \), and \( m \) are always written as \( g \), \( d \), \( b \), and \( l \). When \( m \) has no sound value, it is replaced by a hyphen. It may also be used when it is necessary to distinguish between syllables.
Pronunciation Rules

Rule 1. Resyllabification

When a syllable in a word ends with a consonant and the next syllable begins with a vowel, the consonant, when pronounced, is part of the latter syllable. For example, 한글은 (han-geul-eun) is pronounced han-geu-reun. In this case, the sound of 꼴 changes from / to r because 꼴 now appears between two vowels. Similarly, when a syllable block ends in a double consonant, the second consonant is pronounced before the vowel as part of the latter syllable, so the Korean word for 읽어요 (il-geo-yo) “read,” is pronounced il-geo-yo.

Rule 2. Final closure in syllable pronunciation

At the end of a word or before a consonant, all Korean consonants are pronounced without releasing air. As a result, consonants at the end of words or preceding other consonants change sounds. For example, 꼴 (kkoch) is pronounced kkot and 꼴도 (kkoch-do) is pronounced kkot-do. The change of 꼴 to 꼴 happens here because the speech organs responsible for the articulation of the word-final and pre-consonantal 꼴 are not released. The sound of 꼴 (ch') becomes t because one does not release air when pronouncing it in these and similar words. The only consonant sounds that occur at the end of a word or before another consonant are the seven simple consonants: 꼴 (p/b), 꼴 (t/d), 꼴 (ch/j), 꼴 (k/g), 꼴 (m), 꼴 (n), 꼴 (ng), and 꼴 (l/r). The sound changes are illustrated below.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{락} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

Rule 3. Nasal assimilation

All plosive and fricative consonants become corresponding nasal consonants when preceding a nasal consonant. For example, 앞문 (ap-mun) “front gate” is pronounced am-mun and 일학년 (il-hak-nyeon) “first grade/first year” is pronounced il-hang-nyeon. The chart below fully illustrates the changes.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{락} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\text{вал}, \text{바}, \text{라} & \rightarrow & \text{라} \\
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

Rule 4. 꼴 to 꼴 assimilation

When 꼴 (l/r) and 꼴 (n) appear together in a word, the 꼴 sound is usually replaced by the 꼴 sound, as in the Korean word for “seven years,” 젤년 (chil-lyeon). When 꼴 is followed by the vowel 꼴 (i) or the semivowel 꼴 (ya) in certain compound words, another 꼴 is inserted between them, as in the Korean word for “liquid medicine,” 물액 (mul-lyak).

Rule 5. Tensification

When a plain plosive consonant 꼴 (p/b), 꼴 (t/d), 꼴 (ch/j), 꼴 (k/g) or the fricative consonant 꼴 (s/sh) is preceded by a plosive or fricative consonant 꼴 (p/b), 꼴 (t/d), 꼴 (ch/j), 꼴 (k/g) or 꼴 (s/sh) it becomes a corresponding tense consonant, as in the words 학생 (hak-saeng) “students,” 없다 (cop-tta) “not exist,” and 학교 (hak-kkyo) “school.”

Rule 6. Aspiration and the weakening of 꼴

When the fricative consonant 꼴 (h) is preceded or followed by a plain plosive consonant 꼴 (p/b), 꼴 (t/d), 꼴 (ch/j), 꼴 (k/g), 꼴 (s/sh), 꼴 (m), 꼴 (n), 꼴 (ng) it merges with the consonant to produce a corresponding aspirate con-
sonant (Ⅱ [p'], Ⅲ [t'], Ⅳ [ch'], Ⅴ [k']), as in the words for 좋은 (jo-ta) ‘to be good’, 입학 (i-pak) ‘entering school’, and 작하다 (cha-ka-da) ‘to be kind’.

**Rule 7. Double consonant reduction**

As indicated in Rule 1, the second of the two consonants at the end of a syllable is, when pronounced, carried over to the following syllable if the latter syllable does not begin with a consonant. However, one of the two consonants becomes silent at the end of a word or before a consonant, as in the words for “price,” 갑 (gap) and 갑도 (gap-tto). In English, up to three consonants may be combined in a syllable, but not even two may be combined in Korean. It is difficult to predict which of two consonants will become silent. The silent consonant is usually the second one, but there are exceptions.

**Rule 8. Palatalization**

When a word ending in (t/d) or (t') is followed by a suffix beginning with the vowel (i) or the semivowel (yeo), the (t) and (t) are pronounced, respectively, ch/j and ch', as in the words for 닫히 (da-chyeo-yo) “to be closed,” and 붙이다 (bu-chi-da) “to attach.” This change is technically called “palatalization” because the original consonants, which are pronounced using the gum-ridge, are articulated with the hard palate.

---

**한글**

**Reading Exercise**

Please read the words below. An answer key appears on the following page.

(1) 아이, 오아, 요요, 우유
(2) 아비, 나라, 사자, 가지, 고추, 개구리, 나무, 다리, 라디오, 오, 모자, 무지개, 바지, 바구니, 사다리, 지도, 조개, 치마, 해바라기, 야기, 거미, 머리, 너구리, 소, 그네
(3) 눈사람, 달군, 독수리, 다람쥐, 리본, 물개, 말, 버섯, 선물, 사슴, 안경, 옥수수, 자동차, 잡자리, 비늘, 거북이, 오징어, 고래, 용, 논, 물소, 드럼, 녹대, 기린, 진주
(4) 야구, 달걀, 야자수, 영소, 병아리, 주사위, 꼭, 유랑선
(5) 책상, 천연조, 컵, 코끼리, 카메라, 코 NotImplemented, 토끼, 타조, 태극기, 포도, 보름, 피아노, 풍차, 해, 호박, 편지, 도토리, 표지판, 우체통, 휴지통, 크레용, 피라미드
(6) 고리, 까마귀, 말, 팽, 게, 싸움, 씨름, 짜장면, 골짜
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

[Answers]
(1) a-i, o-i, yo-yo, u-yu
(2) na-bi, na-ra, sa-ja, ga-ji, go-chu, gae-gu-ri, na-mu, da-ri, ra-di-o, mo-ja, mu-ji-gae, ba-ji, ba-gu-ni, sa-da-ri, ji-do, jo-gea, chi-ma, hae-ba-ra-gi, a-gi, geo-mi, meo-ri, neo-gu-ri, so, geu-ne
(4) ya-gu, dal-gyal, ya-ja-su, byeong-a-ri, ju-sa-wi, gyul, yu-ram-seon

Abbreviations

abbr. abbreviation
adj. adjective (including noun-modifier in Korean)
adv. adverb
coll. colloquial
conj. conjunction
cop. copula, i.e., linking verb
count. counter
dat. dative/indirect object particle
dir. direction
e.g. for example
fut. future tense
hon. honorific
loc. location
n. noun
num. number
obj. object/object particle
part. particle
pl. plural
pren. pre-noun/noun modifier
pres. present tense
pron. pronoun
pst. past tense
sing. singular
subj. subject/subject particle
top. topic/topic particle
v. verb (including both active verb and descriptive verb in Korean)
Lesson 1: Greetings
표현 Patterns

안녕하세요?
an-nyeong-ha-sim-ni-kka?
How are you? / Hello.

안녕히 가십시오.
an-nyeong-hi ga-sip-si-o.
Good-bye (to the one leaving).

안녕히 계십시오.
an-nyeong-hi gye-sip-si-o.
Good-bye (to the one staying).

처음 뵐겠습니다.
cheo-eum boep-get-seum-ni-da.
Nice to meet you. (first time only)

다음에 또 뵐겠습니다.
da-eum-e to boep-get-seum-ni-da.
See you next time.

오래간만입니다.
o-rae-gan-man-im-ni-da.
Long time, no see.

그 동안 잘 지내셨습니까?
geu dong-an jal ji-nae-syeot-seum-ni-kka?
How have you been? (lit. Have you been doing well?)

요즘 어떻게 지내십니까?
yo-jeum eo-tteo-ke ji-nae-sim-ni-kka?
How are you these days?

Lesson 1: Greetings

역분에 잘 지냈습니까.
deoek-bun-e jal ji-nae-scum-ni-da.
I have been doing fine, thanks to you.

역분에 잘 지내십니다.
deoek-bun-e jal ji-nam-ni-da.
I am fine, thanks to you.

그저 그렇게입니다.
geu-jeo geu-root-seum-ni-da.
So-so.

만나 뵐게 되서 반갑습니다.
man-na boep-ge dwae-seo ban-gap-seum-ni-da.
Nice to meet you.

만나 뵐게 되서 정말 즐거웠습니다.
I was glad to meet you.

다시 뵐게 되서 정말 반갑습니다.
da-si boep-ge dwae-seo jeong-mal ban-gap-seum-ni-da.
Nice to see you again.

저도 반갑습니다.
jeo-do ban-gap-seum-ni-da.
I am glad, too.

저도 잘 지내십니다.
jeo-do jal ji-nam-ni-da.
I am doing fine, too.

저도 즐거웠습니다.
I was glad, too.
대화 Model Conversations

(1)

이정호: 안녕하세요? 처음 벨겠습니다. 저는 이정호라고 합니다.

김현준: 안녕하십니까? 김현준입니다. 만나 벨게 되어서 반갑습니다.

이정호: 저도 반갑습니다. 그런데 실험지에 김현준님이 어떤 일을 하십니까?

김현준: 저는 IBM에서 근무합니다. 컴퓨터 엔지니어입니다. 이성생님은 어떤 일을 하십니까?

이정호: 저는 아직 학생입니다. 의과대학에 다닙니다.

김현준: 저는 IBM에서 근무합니다. 컴퓨터 엔지니어입니다. 이성생님은 어떤 일을 하십니까?

이정호: 저도 반갑습니다. 컴퓨터 엔지니어입니다. 이성생님은 어떤 일을 하십니까?

김현준: 저는 IBM에서 근무합니다. 컴퓨터 엔지니어입니다. 이성생님은 어떤 일을 하십니까?

이정호: 저도 반갑습니다. 컴퓨터 엔지니어입니다. 이성생님은 어떤 일을 하십니까?

(2)

박성민: 안녕하십니까, 태민씨. 정말 오랜만입니다.

최태민: 안녕하십니까, 성민씨. 요즘 어떻게 지내십니까?

박성민: 안녕하십니까, 태민씨. 정말 오랜만입니다.
Lesson 1: Greetings

영문번역 English Translation

(1)
Lee: How are you? Nice to meet you. My name is Jeong-Ho Lee. What is your name?
Lee: Nice to meet you, too. By the way, what do you do for living?
Kim: I am working at IBM. I am a computer engineer. What do you do for living, Mr. Lee?
Lee: I am still a student yet. I am attending medical school.

(2)
Park: Hello, Tae-min. Long time, no see. [lit. It has been a really long time, no see.]
Choi: Hi, Seong-min. How are you?
Park: I am fine. How are you doing these days?
Choi: I am doing fine, too. I am so glad to see you again.
Park: I am glad, too.

(3)
Lee: Mr. Kim, it was so nice [lit. happy] to meet you. See you next time.
Kim: It was nice to meet you, too. [lit. I was happy, too.] Good-bye.
Lee: OK. Good-bye.
Vocabulary

Nouns & Pronouns

가-난 gim-seon-saeng-nim
김현준 Kim, Hyeon-Jun
박성민 Park, Seong-Min
성민씨 seong-min-ssi
성함 seong-ham
안지니어 en-ji-mi-eo
의과대학 ui-kkwa-dae-hak
이선생님 i-seon-saeng-nim
이정호 i-jeong-ho
일 il
저 jio
최태민 choi-tae-min
컴퓨터 keom-pu-teo
태민씨 tae-min-ssi
학생 hak-saeng

Verbs

가다 ga-da
계시다 gyo-si-da
근무하다 geun-mu-da
다니다 da-ni-da
되다 doe-da
만나 봐다 man-na-boep-da
반갑다 ban-gap-da
별다 boep-da
안녕하다 an-nyeong-ha-da
오래간만이다 o-rae-gan-man-i-da
졸업다 jeul-geop-da

Adverbs & Conjunctions

during the time
by the way (when change topic)
then
again
next time
thanks to (you)
again
Excuse me....
yet
safely, peacefully
which
how
yes, OK
these days
well
really, so
for the first time
문법 Grammar

(1) More Useful Expressions

고맙습니다. go-map-seum-ni-da.
감사합니다. gam-sa-ham-ni-da.
Thank you.
Thank you.

천만에요. cheon-man-e-yo.
별 말씀을요. byeol mal-sseum-eul-yo.
무슨 말씀을요. mu-seun mal-sseum-eul-yo.
You are welcome.
You are welcome.

죄송합니다. joe-song-ham-ni-da.
괜찮습니다. gwaen-chan-seum-ni-da.
I am sorry.
It’s OK.
No problem.

어서 오세요. eo-seo o-se-yo.
실례합니다. sil-lye-ham-ni-da.
Welcome.
Excuse me.

Note:
In Korean, 안녕하십니까? (an-nyeong-ha-sim-ni-kka), which literally means, “Are you at peace?,” is used as a greeting regardless of the time of day. It functions as the equivalent of “Good morning,” “Good afternoon,” and “Good evening.” It can also mean, “How are you?” or “Nice to meet you.” The appropriate response is 안녕하십니까? (an-nyeong-ha-sim-ni-kka). As for other greetings in the dialogues, 안녕히 가십시오 (an-nyeong-hi ga-sip-si-o) literally means “Please go in peace,” and 안녕히 계십시오 (an-nyeong-hi gye-sip-si-o) means “Please stay in peace.”

The expressions 처음 뵈겠습니다 (cheo-eum boep-get-sseum-ni-da), which literally means “It’s the first time seeing you,” and 만나 뵈도서 반갑습니다 (man-na boep-ge dwae-seo ban-gap-seum-ni-da), the equivalent of “I am so glad to meet you,” are used only when meeting someone for the first time. When parting, one says 다음에 또 뵈겠습니다 (da-eum-e tto boep-get-seum-ni-da), which means “See you again next time.” Those who have previously met one another say 또 뵈도서 반갑습니다 (tto boep-ge dwae-seo ban-gap-seum-ni-da) or 다시 뵈도서 반갑습니다 (da-si boepge dwae-seo ban-gap-seum-ni-da). Both expressions mean “I am so glad to see you again.”

When saying one’s name, one uses the patterns 저는 [name] 입니다 (jeo-neun [name] im-ni-da) or 저는 [name] 이라고 합니다 (jeo-neun [name] i-ra-go ham-ni-da). With 저는 [name] 이라고 합니다, the 이 preceding 라고 합니다 only occurs when the name ends in a consonant. For example, 저는 김현준이라고 합니다 (jeo-neun gim-hyeon-jun-i-ra-go ham-ni-da) “My name is Gim-Hyeon-Jun.” The 저는 (jeo-neun) is optional with both patterns.

The Korean equivalent of “Thank you” is 고맙습니다 (go-map-seum-ni-da), or 감사합니다 (gam-sa-ham-ni-da). Appropriate replies include 천만에요 (cheon-man-e-yo), 별 말씀을요 (byeol mal-sseum-eul-yo), and 무슨 말씀을요 (mu-seun mal-sseum-eul-yo). One may also smile silently or reply with ne, the equivalent of “Yes.” The expression 안녕에요 means “Not at all,” and both 별 말씀을요and 무슨 말씀을요 translate as “Don’t mention it.”

The proper response to 죄송합니다 (joe-song-ham-ni-da) “I am sorry” is 괜찮습니다 (gwaen-chan-seum-ni-da) “It’s OK.” If 실례합니다 (sil-lye-ham-ni-da) “Excuse me” is said, one should remember there is no appropriate reply in Korean. One responds through one’s facial expression.

When visiting someone’s home or entering a store, the host or salesperson will say the Korean equivalent of “Welcome,” 어서 오세요 (eo-seo o-se-yo), which literally means “Please come hurry.” The appropriate reply when visiting someone’s home is 실례합니다.
(2) Deferential Sentence Endings

The suffixes affixed to the verb at the close of a sentence indicate the relative social status and/or the personal relationship of the speaker and the addressee(s). There are four speech levels or categories for these relationships: deferential, polite, intimate, and plain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Request</th>
<th>Suggestion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문니-da.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문니-kka?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문니-da.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문니-kka?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~a-yo?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문세요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문세요?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문세요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문세요?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intimate</td>
<td>~아/어.</td>
<td>~아/어?</td>
<td>~아/어.</td>
<td>~아/어.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~a/eo.</td>
<td></td>
<td>~a/eo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문세요.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문세요?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>~다</td>
<td>~나/나?</td>
<td>~아/어리</td>
<td>~지.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~다</td>
<td></td>
<td>~a/eco.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The deferential style of speech is generally spoken in formal settings, such as conferences, news broadcasts, business meetings, and formal speeches or interviews. By and large, males use this style more often than females, who generally use the polite style in these circumstances.

Additionally, the deferential style is frequently used when beginning a conversation. This occurs when people, usually males, meet for the first time. After introductions are made in the deferential style, further conversation uses the polite form, as a relationship is now established.

The table below illustrates the patterns used for speaking in the deferential in both the simple and honorific forms. The pattern is determined by whether the verb stem (e.g. 받 [bat] in 받다 [bat-da] "to receive") ends in a vowel or a consonant. The consonant pattern is indicated with a C and is demonstrated with 받다. The vowel pattern is indicated with a V, with the forms demonstrated using the verb 가다 (ga-da) "to go."

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Request</th>
<th>Suggestion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Simple</strong></td>
<td><del>습/</del>/네다.</td>
<td>~문/문시요.</td>
<td>~문/문시요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문니-da.</td>
<td>~문/문니-kka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문니-da.</td>
<td>~문/문니-kka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Honorific</strong></td>
<td><del>습/</del>/네다.</td>
<td>~문/문시요.</td>
<td>~문/문시요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문니-da.</td>
<td>~문/문니-kka?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>~문/문니-da.</td>
<td>~문/문니-kka?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(3) Case Particles

A. The Subject Particles ~0| (i) and 가 (ga)

The particles ~0| and 가 determine the subject of a sentence that depicts an action. The subject of a sentence is the noun denoting who or what is performing the action. The particle ~0| is attached to subject nouns that end in a consonant, such as 음식 (eum-sig)/“food” in the sentence 음식이 맛있습니다 (eum-sig-i mas-it-seum-ni-da)/“The food is delicious.” The particle 가 is attached to subject nouns that end in a vowel, such as 한국어 (han-gug-eo)/“the Korean language” in the sentence 한국어가 재미있습니다 (han-gug-eo-ga jae-mi-it-seum-ni-da)/“Korean is fun.”

B. The Object Particles ~을 (eul) and 를 (reul)

The particles ~을 and 를 indicate the object of a sentence that depicts an action. The object of a sentence is the noun denoting what or whom the action is being performed upon. The particle ~을 is attached to object nouns that end in a consonant, such as 아침 (a-chim)/“breakfast” in the sentence 아침을 먹습니다 (a-chim-eul meok-seum-ni-da)/“Jeong-Ho eats breakfast.” The particle ~을 is attached to object nouns that end in a vowel, such as 커피 (keo-pi)/“coffee” in the sentence 마이클이 커피를 마십니다 (ma-i-keul-i keo-pi-reul ma-sim-ni-da)/“Michael drinks a coffee.”

C. The Topic Particles ~은 (eun) and ~는 (neun)

The particles ~은 and ~는 follow the topic noun of a descriptive sentence. The topic noun is the noun that the sentence describes. The particle ~은 is attached to nouns that end in a consonant, such as 미셸 (ma-i-keul)/“Michael” in the sentence 미셸이 키가 작습니다 (ma-i-keul-eun ki-ga jak-seum-ni-da)/“Michael is small.” The particle ~는 is attached to nouns that end in a vowel, such as 정호 (jeong-ho)/“Jeong-Ho” in the sentence 정호는 키가 클니다 (jeong-ho-neun ki-ga keum-ni-da)/“Jeong-Ho is tall.”

D. The Locative Particles ~에 (e) and ~에서 (e-seo)

The sentence pattern ~에 있다/없다 (e it-da/eop-da) is used to indicate where an object exists in space. Two things are presented: the noun’s existence and its location, which, in the context of the sentence, is unchanging. For example:

신문이 테이블 위에 있습니다. (sin-mun-i te-i-beul wi-e it-seum-ni-da)
The newspaper is on the table.

(Note: The verb 있다 (it-da) roughly translates as “to be.” The verb 없다 (eop-da) is its negative, or “not to be.” These verbs have conjugations, e.g. 있습니다 (it-seum-ni-da) in the above sentence. They are discussed further in Unit 4.)

When ~에 is used with directional verbs, such as 가다 (ga-da) “to go,” 오다 (o-da) “to come,” or 다니다 (da-ni-da) “to attend,” it denotes the movement of the subject noun to the indicated location. Examples:

마이클은 내일 L.A에 갑니다. (ma-i-keul-eun nae-il el-e-i-gam-ni-da)
Michael goes to L.A. tomorrow.

Jeong-Ho goes to (attends) a medical school.
BEGINNER’S KOREAN

Lesson 1: Greetings

The particle ～에 to indicates the location or setting of an activity. Examples:

현준씨는 IBM에서 근무합니다.
(hyeon-jun-ssi-neun a-i-bi-em-e-seo geun-mu-ham-ni-da)
Hyeon-Joon works at IBM.

정호씨는 병원에서 일합니다.
(jeong-ho-ssi-neun byeong-won-e-seo il-ham-ni-da)
Jeong-Ho works at a hospital.

The Special Particles

E. The Special Particles은 (eun)/는 (neun), 도 (do), and 만 (man)

The particles ～은/는, ～도, and ～만 are used when comparing things. Nouns ending in a consonant use ～은, and nouns ending in a vowel use ～는. The particles ～은/는 are always affixed to the first noun in the comparison.

The particles ～은/는, when affixed to all nouns being compared, denote difference. The nouns are being contrasted. For example:

정호는 의사입니다. 미셸은 선생님이입니다.
Jeong-Ho is a doctor. Michelle is a teacher.

The particle ～도 denotes similarity. It indicates that a noun is similar to the first one. For example:

정호는 의사입니다. 미셸도 의사입니다.
Jeong-Ho is a doctor. Michelle is a doctor, too.

The particle ～만 roughly translates as “only.” It indicates that the final noun is unique among the other nouns in the comparison. For example:

미셸은 선생님입니다. 마이클도 선생님입니다. 정호만 의사입니다.
Michelle is a teacher. Michael is a teacher, too. Only Jeong-Ho is a doctor.

Note the use of ～도 to denote Michael’s similarity to Michelle.

(4) Topic-Comment Structure

The topic-comment structure (Noun 1 is Noun 2) is one of the basic Korean sentence structures. It is a fundamental way of conveying ideas. The speaker picks a person, idea, or object and uses the structure to describe and comment on it.

The topic-comment sentence pattern in Korean is [Noun 1] 은/는 [Noun 2]입니다([Noun 1]-eun/-neun [Noun 2]-im-ni-da.). The particle ～이/이 always comes after the second noun. Its presence changes the noun into a predicate. The pattern is commonly used when identifying oneself. Examples:

저는 김현준입니다.
(jeo-neun gim-hyeon-jun-im-ni-da)
My name is Hyeon-Jun Kim. (lit. I Hyeon-Jun Kim am.)

저는 학생입니다.
(jeo-neun hak-saeng-im-ni-da)
I am a student. (lit. I a student am.)
The negative of the topic-comment structure (Noun 1 isn’t Noun 2) in Korean is [Noun 1] 은/는 [Noun 2] 이/가 아닙니다. ([Noun 1] -eun/-neun [Noun 2]-i/-ga a-nim-ni-da.). The particle 이/가 (-i/-ga) only occurs in negative constructions, and the word 아닙니다 (a-nim-ni-da) is the negative of 일닙니다 (im-ni-da). Examples:

저는 학생이 아닙니다.
(jeo-neun hak-saeng-i a-nim-ni-da)
I am not a student.

미셸은 의사가 아닙니다.
(mi-syel-eun ui-sa-ga a-nim-ni-da)
Michelle is not a doctor.

(5) The use of -(으)시- ((eu)-si) as an honorific.

When the characters -(으)시- are affixed to the verb stem, it indicates that the subject of the sentence is a person deserving of respect, such as an elderly person or someone of higher social status. For example:

할머니가 가실니다.
(hal-meo-ni-ga-gim-ni-da)
Grandmother is going.

This may also be done as a sign of courtesy.

In Korea, one attends elementary school for six years, middle school for three years, and high school for three years. Colleges and universities offer four-year undergraduate programs as well as graduate education. There are also two-year junior colleges (often called community colleges in the U.S.). The school year begins in March and ends in February.

Elementary school and middle school education are compulsory in Korea. Unlike the United States, kindergarten is not a part of Korean elementary school. Students between the ages of 4 and 7 have the option of attending private institutes called 유치원 (yu-chi-won) before they start their regular schooling. The 유치원 are the equivalent of U.S. preschools.
(2) Colleges in a University

법과대학 (법대) beop-gwa-dae-hak: law school
의과대학 (의대) ui-kkwa-dae-hak: medical school
치과대학 (치대) chi-kkwa-dae-hak: dental school
약학대학 (약대) yak-hak-dae-hak: college of pharmacy
사범대학 (사대) sa-beom-dae-hak: school of teacher education
상경대학 (상대) sang-gyeong-dae-hak: school of business
공과대학 (공대) gong-kkwa-dae-hak: engineering school
음악대학 (음대) eum-ak-dae-hak: school of music
미술대학 (미대) mi-sul-dae-hak: school of art
체육대학 (체대) che-yuk-dae-hak: college of physical education
인문대학 (인문대) in-mun-dae-hak: school of humanities
자연대학 (자연대) ja-yeon-dae-hak: school of sciences

(3) Occupations

가수 ga-su: singer
간호원 gan-ho-won: nurse
공무원 gong-mu-won: civil servant
교수 gyo-su: professor
군인 gun-in: military personnel

(4) Names of Majors

가정학 geon-chuk-hak: architecture
경영학 gyeong-yeong-hak: business management
경제학 gyeong-je-hak: economics
공학 gong-hak: engineering
교육학 gyo-yuk-hak: education
동양학 dong-yang-hak: Asian studies
문학 mun-hak: literature
물리학 mul-li-hak: physics
미술 mi-sul: fine arts
법학 beo-pak: law
사회학 sa-hoe-hak: sociology
생물학 saeng-mul-hak: biology
수학 su-hak: mathematics
심리학 sim-ri-hak: psychology
언어학 con-eo-hak: linguistics
역사학 yeok-sa-hak: history
Lesson 1: Greetings

Cultural Notes

(1) Korean Names

In Korean, the family name comes first, followed by the given name. Korean names generally have three syllables: one for the family name and two for the given name. For example, with the name 이정호 (i-jeong-ho), 이 (i) is the family name and 정호 (jeong-ho) is the given name. However, there are some two-syllable family names, such as 재갈 (je-gal) or 황보 (hwang-bo). Korea has approximately 300 family names. The five most common are 김 (gim)/Kim, 이 (i)/Lee, 박 (bak)/Park, 최 (choe)/Choi, and 정 (jeong)/Chung (or Jung).

(2) 선생님 (seon-saeng-nim) vs. -님 (ssii)

The word 선생님 (seon-saeng-nim) literally means “teacher,” but Koreans use the word as a standard form of address. It can be used as a simple honorific, the equivalent of “Mr.,” “Mrs.,” or “Ms.,” or as a title when addressing one’s elders, older people in general, or business colleagues with whom one does not have a personal relationship. The proper way of using the word 선생님 when addressing someone is to add it to the end of their full name or last name. Using it with the full name is more formal and polite.

The honorific suffix -님 (ssii), used in Model Conversations (2) above, is an expression of courtesy towards one’s coworkers. It is not appropriate when speaking or referring to one’s elders or older people. When using -님, one should attach it to the addressee’s first name or to the last name when preceded by the first name. Referring to someone by just his or her last name followed by -님 is condescending.
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

(3) 살례지만 (sil-lye-ji-man) Excuse me, but...

The phrase 살례지만 (sil-lye-ji-man) always accompanies personal questions, such as those about one's age, job, or family life (including marriage). In Korean culture, such questions are always asked when meeting someone for the first time. The answers provide information that is necessary in determining the appropriate honorifics and sentence endings in further conversation.

(4) 덕분에 (deok-bun-e) Thanks to you

The expression 잘 지내셨습니까? (jal ji-nae-syeot-seum-ni-kka) is the equivalent of "How are you?" or "How have you been?" The usual Korean reply is 덕분에 잘 지냈습니다 (deok-bun-e jal ji-naet-seum-ni-da), which means "Thanks to you, I am fine," or "Thanks to you, I have been fine." The expression of gratitude reflects the traditional Korean belief that another's concern and blessing helps one to maintain a safe and happy life.

(5) Greetings with a bow

Bowing is the easiest and most common way to show courtesy when greeting someone. In general, the younger person initiates the bow and the older person reciprocates. Bowing is done by bending both head and waist about 15 degrees forward. Male adults often shake hands with one or both hands while bowing. During this greeting process, it is common courtesy to ask the addressee how they have been or whether they have eaten.

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 안녕하십니까?
an-nyeong-ha-sim-ni-kka?
(2) 처음 뵙겠습니다. 만나서 반갑습니다.
(3) 요즘 어떻게 지내십니까?
yo-jeum eo-teo-ke ji-nae-sim-ni-kka?
(4) 살례지만 성함이 어떻게 되십니까?
sil-le-ji-man seong-ham-i eo-teo-ke doe-sim-ni-kka?
(5) 살례지만 어떤 일을 하십니까?
sil-le-ji-man eo-teon il-eul ha-sim-ni-kka?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 감사합니다. gam-sa-ham-ni-da.
(2) 살례합니다. sil-le-ham-ni-da.
(3) 죄송합니다. jose-song-ham-ni-da.
(4) 어서 오세요. eo-seo o-se-yo.
(5) 별 말씀을요. byeol mal-seum-eul-yo.

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) How have you been?
(2) I have been doing fine, thanks to you.
(3) Long time, no see.
(4) See you next time.
(5) Nice to see you again.

4. Please write a paragraph introducing yourself (what your name is, where you work or study, etc.).
Lesson 2: Asking about Something & Talking about Yourself
Lesson 2: Asking about Someone & Talking about Yourself

정호씨는 맡이 어디심니까?
jeong-ho-ssi-neun daeg-i eo-di-sim-ni-kka?
Where is your home, Jeong-Ho?

저희 집은 샌디에이고입니다.
jeo-hi jib-eun saen-di-i-e-i-go-im-ni-da.
My home is in San Diego.

저는 한국에서 왔습니다.
I am from Korea.

저는 수원에서 산다.
jeo-neun su-won-e-seo sam-ni-da.
I live in Su-won.

현준씨는 한국 본이십니까?
hyeon-jun-ssi-neun han-guk bun-i-sim-ni-kka?
Are you Korean?

네, 그렇습니다. 저는 한국 사람이입니다.
Yes, I am. I am Korean.

아니오, 저는 한국 사람이 아닙니다.
a-ni-o, jeo-neun han-guk-sa-ram-i a-nim-ni-da.
No, I am not Korean.

정호씨는 요?
jeong-ho-ssi-neun-yo?
How about you, Jeong-Ho?

저는 한국계 미국인입니다.
I am Korean-American.

저는 미시간에서 태어났습니다.
I was born in Michigan.

정호씨는 과연 언제가 어떻게 되십니까?
jeong-ho-ssi-neun ol-hae yeon-se-ga eo-tteo-ke doe-sim-ni-kka?
How old are you this year, Jeong-Ho?

서론들입니다.
seo-reun dul-im-ni-da.
I am thirty-two.

저도 서론 두살이에요.
jeo-do seo-reun du-sal-i-e-yo.
I am also thirty-two.

저하고 동갑이시군요.
jeo-ha-go dong-gab-i-si-gun-yo.
You are the same age as me.

저보다 좀 많으시군요.
jeo-bo-da jom man-eu-si-gun-yo.
You are a little older than me.

저보다 좀 적으시군요.
jeo-bo-da jom jeog-eu-si-gun-yo.
You are a little younger than me.

현준씨는 생일이 언제세요?
hyeon-jun-ssi-neun saeng-il-i eon-je-se-yo?
When is your birthday, Hyeon-Jun?
Lesson 2: Asking about Someone & Talking about Yourself

BEGINNER’S KOREAN

It is in April.

I was born in July.

Are you married, Jeong-Ho?

No, I’m still single. (lit. No, I still live by myself.)

Yes, I have one.

I have two daughters and a son.

Note: In Korean sometimes questions are asked in the negative because one wants to give the respondent the opportunity to answer no at all times without feeling uneasy. This is different than English, where negative questions are generally considered rude and confrontational.)
대화 Model Conversations

(1)

이정호: 설레지만 성함이 어떻게 되실니까?
sil-lye-ji-man seong-ham-i eo-tteo-ke doe-sim-ni-kka?

김현준: 저는 김현준입니다. 성함이 어떻게 되실니까?
jeo-neun gim-hyeon-jun-im-ni-da. seong-ham-i eo-tteo-ke doe-sim-ni-kka?

이정호: 저는 이정호라고 합니다. 그런데 설레지만 김현준님은 어떤 말씀을 하십니까?
jeo-neun i-jeong-ho-ra-go ham-ni-da.
geu-reon-de sil-lye-ji-man gim-seon-saeng-nim-eun eo-tteon il-eul ha-sim-ni-kka?

김현준: 저는 IBM에서 근무합니다. 컴퓨터 엔지니어입니다.
이선생님은 어떤 말씀을 하십니까?
jeo-neun a-i-bi-em-e-seo geun-mu-ham-ni-da.
keom-pu-teo en-ji-ni-eo-im-ni-da.
i-seon-saeng-nim-eun eo-tteon il-eul ha-sim-ni-kka?

이정호: 저는 아직 학생입니다. 의과대학에 다닙니다.

(2)

김현준: 정호씨는 맥이 어디시니까?
jeong-ho-ssi-neun daeg-i eo-di-sim-ni-kka?

이정호: 샌디에이고입니다. 현준씨는 맥이 어디시니까?
saen-di-e-i-go-im-ni-da. hyeon-jun-ssi-neun daeg-i eo-di-sim-ni-kka?

김현준: 저는 한국에서 왔습니다. 수원에서 산다.

이정호: 그것 현준씨는 한국 본이실니까?
geu-reom hyeon-jun-ssi-neun han-guk bun-i-sim-ni-kka?

김현준: 네, 그렇습니다. 정호씨는요?
ne, geu-reot-seum-ni-da. jeong-ho-ssi-neun-yo?
Lesson 2: Asking about Someone & Talking about Yourself

영문변역 English Translation

(1) Lee: Excuse me. May I have your name, please?
Kim: My name is Hyeon-Jun Kim. May I have your name, please?
Lee: My name is Jeong-Ho Lee. Excuse me, but do you mind if I ask what do you do for living?
Kim: I am working at IBM. I am a computer engineer. What do you do for living, Mr. Lee?
Lee: I am still a student. I am attending medical school.

(2) Kim: Where is your home, Jeong-Ho?
Lee: It's in San Diego. Where is your home, Hyeong-Jun?
Lee: Are you Korean, then?
Kim: Yes, I am. How about you, Jeong-Ho?
Lee: I am Korean-American. I was born in Michigan.

(3) Kim: Excuse me. How old are you this year, Jeong-Ho?
Lee: I am thirty-two.
Kim: Ah, then we are the same age. I am also thirty-two.
Lee: Is it? Then when is your birthday?
Kim: It's in April.
Lee: Ah, is that so? Then you are a little older than I am. I was born in July.

(4) Kim: Are you married, Jeong-Ho?
Lee: No, I am still single. How about you, Hyeon-Jun?
Kim: I got married last year.
Lee: How many people are in your family, then?
Kim: My wife and I, there are only two.
Lee: Do you have children yet?
Kim: No, not yet.

어휘 Vocabulary

Nouns and Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sa-wol</td>
<td>April</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chil-wol-saeng</td>
<td>born in July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ga-jok</td>
<td>family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daek</td>
<td>home, house (hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dong-gap</td>
<td>same age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi-guk-si-min</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi-si-gan</td>
<td>American citizen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saen-di-e-i-go</td>
<td>Michigan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saeng-il</td>
<td>San Diego, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seo-reun-dul</td>
<td>birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su-won</td>
<td>thirty-two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-i</td>
<td>Su-won, Korea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeon-se</td>
<td>child, kid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ol-hae</td>
<td>age (hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jang-nyeon</td>
<td>this year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jip-sa-ram</td>
<td>last year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han-guk-bun</td>
<td>(my) wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han-guk</td>
<td>Korean (hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>han-guk-gye</td>
<td>Korea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| han-guk-kye | Korean-

Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gyeol-hon-ha-da</td>
<td>to get married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geu-reo-ta</td>
<td>it is, I am, s/he is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-ta</td>
<td>to be more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sal-da</td>
<td>to live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cop-da</td>
<td>not to exist, not to have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o-da</td>
<td>to come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tae-eo-na-da</td>
<td>to be born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha-da</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adverbs and Conjunctions

네 ne
아 a
아니요 a-ni-o
아직 a-jik
여디 eo-di
어떻게 eo-tteo-ke
예제 eon-je
좀 jom
혼자 hon-ja

yes
ah
no
yet, still
where
how
when
a little
by oneself, alone

Grammar

(1) The Possessive Particle ~의 (ui)

The possessive particle ~의 (generally pronounced like 엘 [el]) indicates ownership and comes after the possessive noun, like “’s” in English. The noun that is possessed immediately follows. For example:

한국 + 의 + 대통령 → 한국의 대통령
Korea + of + president → Korea’s president / the President of Korea

However, ~의 is generally only used in written Korean. Most Korean speakers drop it in conversation. One only tends to hear it when the possessor and possessed both refer to abstract concepts. In other words, when someone says, for example, “Michael’s wallet” in Korean, one will hear 마이클 지갑 (ma-i-keul ji-gap) instead of 마이클의 지갑 (ma-i-keul-e ji-gap).

(2) The Time Particle ~에 (e)

The particle ~에 is used when referring to the time of day, the days of the week, and the months of the year. It immediately follows the time word or phrase it follows, e.g.

일요일에 il-yo-il-e on Sundays
주말에 ju-mal-e on the weekend
12시에 yeol-ttu-si-e at 12:00
Many time-related words and phrases do not use ~어. These include:

오늘 o-neul today
어제 eo-je yesterday
그제 geu-je the day before yesterday
내일 nae-il tomorrow
모레 mo-re the day after tomorrow
매일 mae-il every day
매주 mae-ju every week
매달 mae-dal every month
매년 mae-hyeon every year

(3) The Dictionary Form of Verbs (verb stem + 다 da)

Verbs in Korean consist of both a stem and an ending. The ending changes based on the form of the verb used. The dictionary form of verbs ends in ~다 (da), creating the equivalent of the English infinitive, e.g.

이다 i-da to be
아니다 a-ni-da to not be
알다 al-da to know
좋다 jo-ta to be good
넓다 neolp-da to be wide

The ~다 has no meaning other than its use in the dictionary form.

(4) The Polite Ending ~아/어요 (a/eo-yo)

The polite ending is the most commonly used ending in conversational Korean. However, there are several variations depending on the stem. In the examples below, which are taken from the verbs listed in (3) immediately above, one begins with the dictionary form of the verb. The ~다 ending is then dropped so that only the stem remains. The polite form of the verb is then created by adding the appropriate ending to the verb stem. The rules governing the appropriate ending for a particular stem are as follows:

(1) Use ~어요 (a-yo) when the last vowel of the stem is either 아 (a) or 오 (o), e.g.

알다 → 알 → 알아요
놀다 → 놀 → 놀어요

(2) Use ~어요 for all other stems, e.g.

먹다 → 먹 → 먹어요
نصر → 낼 → 낼어요

(3) Some exceptions:

이다 → 이 → 이예요
아니다 → 아니 → 아니예요
하다 → 하 → 하요
An honorific form of the polite ending is ~(으)세요 (jeu-se-yo), which is a combination of the honorific marker ~(으)시 (jeu-si) and the polite ending ~어요 (eo-yo). The honorific form has two uses. The first is to show respect for the person being talked about, e.g.

이선생님은 좋은 선생님이세요.
(iseon-saeng-nim-eun jeo-eun saeng-nim-i-se-yo)
Mr. Lee is a good teacher.

The second is to show respect towards a person when asking he or she to do something, including answering a question. For example:

안녕하세요? 여기 앉으세요. 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?
(an-nyeong-ha-se-yo? jeo-jeo-se-yo? yeo-jeum eo-tteo-ke jin-nae-se-yo?)
Hello. Please sit here. How are you doing these days?

(5) The Past Tense of Verbs

Verbs in the past tense use the past tense markers 였/었 (at/ot), which are placed between the verb stem and the sentence endings such as the one used in the polite form. The marker 였 is used when the stem ends in 아 (a) or 오 (o). The marker 워 is used with all other verbs. Contractions are formed after the marker is added. The examples below show how to create the past tense in the polite form:

to go 가다 ga-da → 가요 ga-yo → 가었어요 gass-eo-yo (went)

to be 이다 i-da → 이세요 i-e-yo → 이었어요 i-eoss-eo-yo (was)
(6) Answering Yes or No Questions

To answer yes to a yes-or-no question in the polite mode, one says 네 (ne), which is followed by the extended response. To answer yes in the plain and intimate modes, one says 은 (eung) followed by the extended response. An example in the polite mode:

한국 사람이세요? (han-guk-sa-ram-i-se-yo?) → 네, 한국 사람이예요. (ne, han-guk-sa-ram-i-se-yo.) Are you a Korean?

To answer no to a yes-or-no question in the polite mode, one says 아니요 (a-ni-o) or, followed by the extended reply. The word 아니 (a-ni) is used in the plain and intimate modes. An example in the polite mode:

한국 사람이세요? (han-guk-sa-ram-i-se-yo?) → 아니요, 한국 사람이 아니예요. (a-ni-o, han-guk-sa-ram-i-a-ni-e-yo.) Are you a Korean?

One can precede a negative reply with 네 or a positive reply with 아니요 if the question is asked using the negative form. In these instances, the English equivalents would be closer to “Yes, that’s correct,” or “No, that’s incorrect.” For example:

한국 사람이 아니세요? (han-guk-sa-ram-i-a-ni-se-yo?) → 네, 한국 사람이 아니예요. (ne, han-guk-sa-ram-i-a-ni-e-yo.) Aren’t you/You aren’t a Korean?

(7) The Expression - 꼬 (gun-yo)

The expression 꼬 at the end of a statement is an equivalent of an English exclamation point. It is used to indicate that the speaker has realized something for the first time. The ending 네요 (ne-yo) can be used this way as well. Examples:

저는 동갑이시군요. 저는 동갑이시네요. (jeo-ha-go dong-gab-i-si-gun-yo.) (jeo-ha-go dong-gab-i-si-ne-yo.) We are the same age! We are the same age!

(8) The Sentence Ending - 은요/는요? (eun-yo/neun-yo?)

The sentence endings 은요/는요? (eun-yo/neunun-yo) are best translated as “How about...?” or “What about...?” The ending 은요 is used when the noun ends in a vowel, e.g.

가족 은요?

How about your family?

The ending 는요 is used when the noun ends in a consonant, e.g.

정호씨 는요?

How about Jeong-Ho?

The 는요 ending can also be used for such phrases as 주말에는요?

(ju-mal-e-neun-yo?) / How about during the weekend?
Reference Further Study

(1) Naming a Language and Nationality/Ethnicity

The Korean name for a country’s language is generally created by taking the name of the country and adding the suffix ~어(eo). The word for a country’s nationality or ethnicity is created in the plain form by adding the suffix ~인(sa-ram). In the formal, one adds the suffix ~인 (in). The chart below illustrates these conversions. Note, that, in some instances, the language and nationality listed are the proper ones, not derivations of the country’s name.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country Name</th>
<th>Language Name</th>
<th>Plain Form</th>
<th>Formal Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>호주</td>
<td>영어</td>
<td>호주 사람</td>
<td>호주인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>호-주</td>
<td>yeong-eo</td>
<td>ho-ju sa-ram</td>
<td>ho-ju-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Australian</td>
<td>Australian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>캐나다</td>
<td>영어</td>
<td>캐나다 사람</td>
<td>캐나다인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>캐-나-다</td>
<td>yeong-eo</td>
<td>kae-na-da sa-ram</td>
<td>kae-na-da-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Canadian</td>
<td>Canadian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중국</td>
<td>중국어</td>
<td>중국 사람</td>
<td>중국인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중-국</td>
<td>jung-gug-eo</td>
<td>gung-guk sa-ram</td>
<td>gung-gug-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영국</td>
<td>영어</td>
<td>영국 사람</td>
<td>영국인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영-국</td>
<td>yeong-eo</td>
<td>yeong-guk sa-ram</td>
<td>yeong-gug-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>British</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>프랑스</td>
<td>프랑스어</td>
<td>프랑스 사람</td>
<td>프랑스인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peu-rang-seu</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>peu-rang-seu sa-ram</td>
<td>peu-rang-seu-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>American</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(2) The Months of the Year

1월 (일월) il-wol  
2월 (이월) i-wol  
3월 (삼월) sam-wol  
4월 (사월) sa-wol  
5월 (오월) o-wol  
6월 (육월) yu-wol  
7월 (칠월) chil-wol  
8월 (팔월) pal-wol  
9월 (구월) gu-wol  
10월 (십월) si-wol  
11월 (십일월) sib-il-wol  
12월 (십이월) sib-i-wol

January
February
March
April
May
June
July
August
September
October
November
December

(3) Years

재작년 jae-jang-nyeon  
작년 jang-nyeon  
올해 ol-hae  
이년 geum-nyeon  
내년 nae-nyeon  
내년나년 nea-hua-nyeon

the year before last year
last year
this year
this year
next year
the year after next year

(4) Family Terms

가족 ga-jok  
 sist-sik  
 집 jip  
택 daek  
할아버지 hal-a-beo-ji  
할머니 hal-meo-ni  
아버지 a-beo-ji  
어머니 eo-meo-ni

family, family members (formal)
family, family members (casual)
house
house (hon.)
grandfather
grandmother
father
mother

Lesson 2: Asking about Someone & Talking about Yourself

형 hyeong  
오빠 o-ppa  
누나 nu-na

man’s older brother
woman’s older brother
man’s older sister

언니 eon-ni  
남동생 nam-dong-saeng  
여동생 yeo-dong-saeng  
남편 nam-pyeon

woman’s older sister
younger brother
younger sister
husband

아내 a-nae  
집사람 jip-sa-ram  
아들 a-deul  
딸 ttal

wife
wife
son
daughter
문화적 참고사항 Cultural Notes

(1) Asking Personal Information

Koreans are almost certain to ask personal questions, such as one’s age or marital status, when first meeting someone. The Korean language requires that information, in order to determine the appropriate sentence endings when addressing another. Other questions that may arise include queries about one’s job, hometown, or education. These are used to help build a rapport between speakers. As the relationship between the speakers develops, a shift will occur from the initial deferential mode of speech to a blend of the deferential and polite modes, and then, perhaps, to the polite mode only.

(2) First-Person Possessive Pronouns and Korean Collectivism

The Korean equivalent of the English possessive pronoun “my” is 내 (nae) in the plain form and 제 (je) in the formal and deferential forms. However, one must keep in mind that Koreans consider things such as their country, school, family, and home as collective possessions. For these, the equivalent of the English “our” will always be used. In the plain form, this is 우리 (u-ri). In the formal and deferential forms, it is 저희 (jeo-hui).

The sense of a family member being a collective possession can extend even to one’s wife or husband. The equivalent of “my wife” is 우리 집사람 (u-ri jip-sa-ram), while the equivalent of my husband is 우리 남편 (u-ri nam-pyeon).

Lesson 2: Asking about Someone & Talking about Yourself

(3) Husband and Wife

When referring to one’s own spouse, one uses a different word than referring to someone else’s. The appropriate words are as follows:

남편 nam-pyeon  
아내 a-nae  
집사람 jip-sa-ram  
바깥 아른 ba-kkat-eo-reun  
주인어른 ju-in-eo-reun  
부인 bu-in  
사모님 sa-mo-nim

one’s own husband  
one’s own wife  
one’s own wife  
ano ther’s husband  
other’s husband  
ano ther’s wife  
other’s wife
연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) daeg-i eo-di-sim-ni-kka?
(2) eo-neu na-ra sa-ram-i-sim-ni-kka?
(3) yeon-se-ga eo-tteo-ke doe-sim-ni-kka?
(4) saeng-il-i eon-je-sim-ni-kka?
(5) gyeol-hon-ha-syeot-seum-ni-kka?
(6) ga-jog-i eo-tteo-ke doe-sim-ni-kka?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(4) a-i-neun a-jik eops-eo-yo. jip-sa-ram-ha-go jeo-ha-go dul-i-e-yo.

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) I am a Korean-American.
(2) I was born in Michigan.
(3) I am from Canada.
(4) I was born in July.
(5) I have no brother and sister.

4. Please write a paragraph introducing yourself (your name, hometown/nationality, age/birthday, family, etc.).
Lesson 3: Asking Directions
표현 Patterns

이 길로 똑바로 가세요.
i gil lo tok ba ro ga se yo.  
Go straight down this street.

신호등을 건너서 오른쪽으로 쪼 가세요.
sin ho deung eul geon neo seo o reun jhog eu ro jjuk ga se yo.  
Cross (at) the traffic signal, turn right, and go straight.

길 건너편에 대한은행이 있어요.
gil geon neo pye on e d ae han eun haeng i iss eo yo.  
Dae Han Bank is (on) across the street.

여기에서 대한은행까지 얼마나 멀니까?
yeo gi e seo d ae han eun haeng kka ji meom ni kka?  
Is it far from here to Dae Han Bank?

여기에서 대한은행까지 시간이 얼마나 걸립니까?
yeo gi e seo d ae han eun haeng kka ji si gan i eol ma na  
geol lim ni kka?  
How long does it take from here to Dae Han Bank?

별로 안 말씀요.
byeol lo an meol eo yo.  
It’s not very far.

길에서 한 20분쯤 걸릴 거예요.
geol eo se han i sip bun jjeum geol lil geo ye yo.  
It will take about 20 minutes by walking.
I moved last Friday and almost finished putting things in order during the weekend.

고생 많이 하셨군요.
go-saeng man-I ha-syeot-gun-yo.
You worked hard. (*lit. You did a hard work.*)

새로 이사하신 집은 어디세요?
sae-ro i-sa-ha-sin jib-eun eo-di-se-yo?
Where is the house you just (*lit. newly) moved into?

병원에서 아주 가까워요.
byeong-won-e-seo a-ju ga-kka-wo-yo.
It is very close to the hospital (where I work).

한 500미터쯤 됐어요.
han o-baeng-mi-teojjeum doel kkeo-ye-yo.
It is about 500 meters (from there).

저희 병원 근처에 서신 아파트 아세요?
jeo-hi byeong-won geun-cheo-e seo-sin a-pa-teu a-se-yo?
Do you know the Seo-Sin Apartment Complex near my hospital?

그 아파트 얼마 전에 새로 지었지요?
geu a-pa-teu col-ma-jeon-e sae-ro ji-eot-ji-yo?
That apartment complex was recently built a (short) while ago, right?

잘 됐네요.
jal dwaen-ne-yo.
That's good (for you).
대화 Model Conversations

(1)
김현준: 실례지만 이 근처에 대한은행이 어디 있습니까?
sil-lye-ji-man i geun-cheo-e dae-han-eun-haeng-i eo-di it-seum-ni-kka?

행인: 이 길로 돈다바로 가세요. 그리고 신호등을 건너서 오른쪽으로 쪽 가세요. 그럼 길 건너편에 대한은행이 있어요.

김현준: 감사합니다. 그런데 여기에서 대한은행까지 얼마나가요?

행인: 별로 안 말아요. 걸어서 한 20분쯤 걸릴 거예요.
byeoal-lo an meol-eo-yo. geol-eo-seo han i-sip-bun jjeum geol-lil kkco-ye-yo.

김현준: 이, 알겠습니다. 감사합니다.

(2)
김현준: 성민씨, 이 근처에서 제일 가까운 커피숍이 어디 있습니까?
seong-min-ssi, i geun-cheo-e-seo je-il ga-kka-un keo-pi-syob-i eo-di it-seum-ni-kka?

박성민: 회사 앞에 제일빌딩 아시지요? 파란색 건물이요. 그 빌딩 지하에 커피숍이 하나 있어요.

김현준: 그건 저도 알아요. 그런데 그 빌딩은 요즘 공사중이라서 너무 복잡해요.

박성민: 그렇군요. 그럼 제일빌딩 바로 뒤에 한영서점 야시죠? 한영서점 안에도 하나 있네요.

김현준: 아니, 점에 이상한 상각형하고 사각형 타일이 붙은 가게 말이죠?
a, byeoeg-e i-sang-han sam-ga-kyeong-ha-go sa-ga-kyeong ta-il-i but-eun ga-ga mal-i-jyo?

박성민: 네, 맞아요.
ne, maj-a-yo.

(3)
최태민: 정호씨, 이사 다 하셨어요?
jeong-ho-ssi, i-sa da hyeoss-eo-yo?

이정호: 네, 지난 주 금요일에 이사하고 오늘 동안 대총 정리했어요.
ne, ji-nan ju geum-yo-il-e i-sa-ha-go ju-mal ttong-an dae-chung jeong-ri-haes-eo-yo.

최태민: 고생 많이 하셨군요. 그런데 새로 이사하신 집은 어떤 디세요?
go-saeng man-i ha-syeot-gun-yo. geu-reon-de sae-ro i-sa-ha-sin jib-eun eo-di-se-yo?

이정호: 지휘 병원에서 아주 가까워요. 한 500미터쯤 됨 거예요. 병원 근처에 서신 아파트 아세요?

byeoeg-won geun-cheo-e seo-sin a-pa-teu a-se-yo?
Lesson 3: Asking Directions

영문변역 English Translation

(1)
Kim: Excuse me, where is the Dae-Han Bank around here?
Pedestrian: Go straight down this road. And cross at the signal light, turn right, and go straight. The Dae-Han Bank is right across the street.
Kim: Thank you. By the way, is the Dae-Han Bank far from here? How much time will it take to get there?
Pedestrian: It's not very far. It should take about 20 minutes by walking.
Kim: Ah, I see. Thank you.

(2)
Kim: Seong-Min, where is the closest coffee shop near here?
Park: You know the Je-Il building next to our office, right? I mean the blue colored building. There is a coffee shop in the basement of the building.
Kim: I know that one. But that building has had construction these past few days, so it is too crowded.
Park: That's right... Then you know the Han-Yeong Bookstore right behind the Je-Il building, right? There is one inside the Han-Yeong Bookstore, too.
Kim: Ah, you mean the store where the wall is covered with strange-looking triangle and square tiles, right?
Park: Yes, that's right.

(3)
Choi: Jeong-Ho, did your move go well?
Lee: Yes, I moved last Friday and almost finished putting things in order during the weekend.
Choi: You did a lot of hard work. By the way, where is the new house you moved to?
Lee: It is very close to the hospital where I work. It is about 500 meters from there. Do you know the Seo-Sin Apartment Complex near the hospital?

Choi: Yes, I know it. That apartment complex was recently built a short while ago, right? That's good for you.

Lee: Yes. And there is a shopping center inside the apartment complex, so it is very convenient.

Lesson 3: Asking Directions

어휘 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

20분점 i-sip-bun-jeum
500미터점 o-bang-mi-teo-jeum
가게 ga-ge
건너편 geon-neo-pyeon
건물 geon-mul
고생 go-saeng
공사중 gong-sa-jung
근처 geun-cheo
급여일 geum-yo-il
일 gil
단지 dan-ji
대합실 dae-han-eun-haeng
바로 위 ba-ro dwi
벽 byeok
병원 byeong-won
사각형 sa-ga-kyeong
삼각형 sam-ga-kyeong
상가 sang-ga
서신아파트 seo-sin-a-pa-teu
시간 si-gan
신호등 sin-ho-deung
아파트 a-pa-teu
안 an
열마전 eol-ma jeon
여기 yeo-gi
옆 yeop
오른쪽 o-reun-ijok
오른쪽 yo-jeum
아사 i-sa
제일빌딩 je-il-bil-ding

about 20 minutes
about 500 meters
store, shop
the other side of a street
building
hard work
on the construction
near
Friday
street, road
(apartment) complex
Dae-Han Bank
right behind
wall
hospital
square
triangle
mall, shopping center
Seo-Sin Apartment
time, hour
traffic signal
apartment (complex)
inside
a while ago
here
beside
right side
these days
moving
Je-II Building
주말 ju-mal
지난 주 ji-nan ju
지하 ji-ha
커피숍 keo-pi-syop
타일 ta-il
파란색 pa-ran-saek
하나 ha-na
한영서점 han-yeong-seo-jeom
행안 haeng-in
회사 hae-sa

周末
上週
地下
咖啡店
地
蓝色
一个
한영書店
行
公司

Adverbs / Prepositions / Conjunctions

by walking
that
but
and
to much
roughly
straight
a lot
not particularly
newly
very, so
not
where
how much/many/long
this
well
our (hom.)
the most
straight
approximately

Verbs

가깝다 ga-kkap-da
감사하다 gam-sa-ha-da
근처다 geon-neo-da
거리다 geol-li-da
맞다 mat-da
밀다 meol-da
복잡하다 bok-ja-pa-da
 Bulldogs but-da
알다 al-da
이사하다 i-sa-ha-da
이상하다 i-sang-ha-da
있다 it-da
잘 되다 jal doe-da
정리하다 jeong-ri-ha-da
짓다 ji-da
편리하다 pyeol-li-ha-da

to be close
to thank
to cross (a street)
to take time
to be correct
to be far
to be crowded
to attach, to be attached
to know
to move
to be strange, to be unusual
to exist
to be done well
to organize
to build
to be convenient
문법 Grammar

(1) Demonstrative Expressions

The demonstrative pronouns 이 (i), 고 (geu), and 저 (jeo) are, respectively, the equivalents of the English “this,” “that,” and “that over there.” When 이 appears before a word, the object denoted by that word is near the speaker. When 고 appears before a word, the object indicated is near the person being spoken to. When 저 appears before a word, the object indicated is something not near either person.

Once the object indicated has been mentioned once, one does not say the word for it again. One uses the word 것 (geot) instead. This is the Korean equivalent for the English word “thing.” If one used 이 with the original noun, one says 이것 from that point on. Likewise, one would say 그것 for an item referred to with 고, and 저것 for something referred to with 저.

The shortened word 거 (geo) may be used instead of 것 in casual conversation. The word 거 may form a contraction with the following particle if that particle begins with a vowel. These contractions are shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Full Form</th>
<th>Contracted Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이것/그것/저것 + 오</td>
<td>이거/그거/저거 + 오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo</td>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이것/그것/저것 + 음</td>
<td>이거/그거/저거 + 음</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo + eun</td>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo + eun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이것/그것/저것 + 음</td>
<td>이거/그거/저거 + 음</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo + eul</td>
<td>i-geo/geu-geo/jeo-geo + eul</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) The Adverbial Pronouns 여기, 거기, and 저기

The Korean equivalents of “here,” “there,” and “over there,” are, respectively, 여기 (yeo-gi), 거기 (geo-gi), and 저기 (jeo-gi). The word 여기 is used when indicating a location near oneself. The word 거기 is used when indicating a location near the person one is speaking to. The word 저기 is used when indicating a location that is not near either oneself or the person to whom one is speaking.

The use of the locative particle 에 (e), the equivalent of “at,” with these words is optional. For example, one may say 여기서 (yeo-gi-seo) instead of 여기에서 (yeo-gi-e-seo).

(2) The Pattern ~부터 ~까지 vs. ~에서 ~까지

The pattern ~부터 ~까지 (bu-teo ... kka-ji) is used when talking about a period of time with a distinct beginning and end. It is the equivalent of the English pattern “from [a beginning time] to [an ending time].” For example, consider the second part of this exchange:

매일 작장에 나가십니까?

(매일, 작장에 나가십니까?)

Do you go to work everyday?

아니오, 월요일부터 금요일까지 나가고 토요일과 일요일은 쉬니다.

(아니오, 월요일부터 금요일까지 나가고 토요일과 일요일은 쉬닙니다.)

No, I go to work from Monday to Friday, and take a rest on Saturday and Sunday.
The phrase 쯔요일부터 금요일까지만 나가고 (wol-yo-il-buteo geum-yo-il-kka-jim-an) means "from Monday to Friday." Note its use of this pattern.

Another "from...to..." pattern is ~에서~까지 (e-seo...kka-ji). This is used when the beginning and ending points are locations. Consider the first half of this exchange:

LA에서 서울까지 비행기로 시간이 얼마나 걸립니까?
(el-e-i-e-seo seo-ul-kka-ji bi-haeng-gi-ro si-gan-i eol-ma-na geol-lim-ni-kka?)
How long does it take from L.A. to Seoul by airplane?

한 열두시간을 걸려요.
(han yeo-ttu-si-gan-jeum geol-lyeo-yo.)
It takes about 12 hours.

The phrase LA에서 서울까지 (el-e-i-e-seo seo-ul-kka-ji) means "from L.A. to Seoul." Again, note the use of the pattern.

(3) The future (prospective) tense of verbs

The pattern [Verb] + ~을 거예요 is used to indicate that one is probably going to do something. An example is the second half of this exchange:

주말에 왜 할 거예요?
(ju-mal-e mwo hal kkeo-ye-yo?)
What are you going to do the on weekend?

극장에 갈 거예요.
(guk-jang-e gal kkeo-ye-yo.)
I will probably go to the movie theater.

When the verb ends in a consonant, use ~을 거예요. When it ends in a vowel, use ~을 거예요.

(4) Irregular Verbs

With irregular verbs, the final sound of the verb stem changes when affixed to certain suffixes. There are nine types.

تاIrregular Verbs

Verbs with stems that end in = are =-irregular verbs. Examples include 들다 (deut-da) / "to listen," 걷다 (geot-da) / "to walk," and 묻다 (mut-da) / "to ask:"

With =-irregular verbs, the = becomes = when followed by a vowel, as it does in the polite form:

들다 (deut-da) → 들 (deut) + 을 (eo-yo) → 들을 (deul-eo-yo)
걷다 (goet-da) → 걷 (geot) + 을 (eo-yo) → 걷을 (geol-eo-yo)
묻다 (mut-da) → 묻 (mut) + 을 (eo-yo) → 묻을 (mul-eo-yo)

Verbs with stems that end in 가= are 가-irregular verbs. Examples include 가깝다 (ga-kkap-da) / "to be close," 어렵다 (eo-reop-da) / "to be difficult," and 무겁다 (mu-geop-da) / "to be heavy."
With =-irregular verbs, the = becomes 우 when followed by a vowel. Again, the examples demonstrate the conversion to the polite form:

가깝다 (ga-kkap-da) → 가깝 (ga-kkap) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 가까우 (ga-kka-wo-yo)

Note that in the polite form, the final 우 of the converted verb stem and the beginning 우 of the form-suffix form the contraction 우 (wo).

--Irregular Verbs

Verbs with stems that end in 우 include:

纠错 (jit-da) / "to build," 봇다 (but-da) / "to pour," and 잇다 (it-da) / "to connect."

When the suffix begins with a vowel, as in the polite form, the 우 is dropped.

纠错 (jit-da) → 젤 (jit) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 지어요 (ji-eo-yo)

봇다 (but-da) → 봇 (but) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 부어요 (bu-eo-yo)

잇다 (it-da) → 잇 (it) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 이어요 (i-eo-yo)

- Irregular Verbs

Verbs with stems that end in - include:

쓰다 (sseu-da) / "to write," 크다 (keu-da) / "to be big," and 아프다 (a-peu-da) / "to be sick." If the form-suffix begins with a vowel, the 우 is dropped. Again, the conversions shown are in the polite form.

쓰다 (sseu-da) → 쓴 (sseu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 써요 (sseo-yo)
크다 (keu-da) → 크 (keu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 크요 (kkeo-yo)

Note that when the final syllable of the stem is 오, as in 아프-, 예쁘-, the contraction syllable 오(pa) is formed with 아. Likewise the contraction syllable 오 pep) is formed when the final syllable of the stem is 익 (ppeo) is formed with 어. When the second to the final syllable vowel in a verb stem is 아, 오, or 염, the sentence ending 아요 is used, and 어요 is used when other vowels come in the same position.

- Irregular Verbs

Verbs with stems that end in 염 include:

돌다 (dol-da) / "to turn," 놈 다 (neul-da) / "to play," and 알아 (al-da) / "to know." If the suffix begins with the consonants 놈, 놈, or 염, the 염 is dropped.

An example of this conversion in question form:

돌다 (dol-da) → 돌 (dol) + 니工商局 (ni-kka) → 도니工商局 (do-ni-kka)

An example in the deferential statement form:

놀다 (neul-da) → 놈 (neul) + 나니工商局 (p-ni-da) → 놈니工商局 (neup-ni-da)

An example in the polite honorific form:

알다 (al-da) → 알 (al) + 세요 (se-yo) → 아세요 (a-se-yo)
Irregular Verbs

Verbs that end in 련 include 부르다 (bu-reu-da) / "to call," 모르다 (mo-reu-da) / "to not know," and 빠르다 (ppa-reu-da) / "to be fast."

With these verbs, the 련 that ends the stem becomes 련. The following examples show the conversion in the polite form:

부르다 (bu-reu-da) → 부르 (bu-reu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 빠르러요 (bul-leo-yo)
모르다 (mo-reu-da) → 모르 (mo-reu) + 에요 (a-yo) → 올라요 (mol-la-yo)
빠르다 (ppa-reu-da) → 빠르 (ppa-reu) + 어요 (eo-yo) → 빠라요 (ppal-la-yo)

Irregular Verbs

This class of irregular verbs relates to verbs with stems that end in 련. These include 푸르다 (pu-reu-da) / "to be blue," 이르다 (i-reu-da) / "to be early," and 누르다 (nu-reu-da) / "to press." If a verb stem ends in 련 and is followed by the vowel 아 or 어, then there is a 련 insertion before the 아 or 어.

푸르다 (pu-reu-da) → 푸르 (pu-reu) + 이서 (eo-seo) → 푸르러서 (pu-reu-reo-seo)
이르다 (i-reu-da) → 이르 (i-reu) + 이서 (eo-seo) → 이르러서 (i-reu-reo-seo)
누르다 (nu-reu-da) → 누르 (nu-reu) + 이서 (eo-seo) → 누르러서 (nu-reu-reo-seo)

Irregular Verbs

This class of verbs relates to verbs with stems that end in 아. These include 하다 (ha-da) / "to do," 좋아하다 (jo-a-ha-da) / "to like," and 싫어하다 (sil-eo-ha-da) / "to dislike."

With these verbs, the 련 part of the syllable block 아 that ends the verb stem becomes 련 when the form-suffix begins with 아 or 아. The following examples show the conversion in the polite form.

하다 (ha-da) → 하 (ha) + 아요 (a-yo) → 해요 (hae-yo)
좋아하다 (jo-a-ha-da) → 좋아 (jo-a-ha) + 아요 (a-yo) → 좋아해요 (jo-a-hae-yo)
싫어하다 (sil-eo-ha-da) → 싫어 (sil-eo-ha) + 아요 (a-yo) → 싫어해요 (sil-eo-hae-yo)

Irregular Verbs

Verbs in this class have stems that end in 습. They include 빨갛다 (ppal-ga-ta) / "to be red," 하얗다 (ha-ya-ta) / "to be blue," and 깊다 (kka-ma-ta) / "to be black."

With these verbs, the 습 ending the stem is dropped if the suffix begins with 련, 련, or 습. (These letters are the nasal consonants.)

The following example shows the sentence in the adjective-final form, in which descriptive verbs become adjectives. Here, the equivalent of the verb "to be red" becomes the equivalent of the adjective "red."

빨갛다 (ppal-ga-ta) → 빨간 (ppal-gan) (+ (n) → 빨간 (ppal-gan)

This example shows the sentence in the conditional form.

하얗다 (ha-ya-ta) → 하일 (ha-ya) + 면 (myeon) → 하이면 (ha-ya-myeon)

This example shows the sentence with the casual sentence ending (으)니까.

깊다 (kka-ma-ta) → 깊 (kka-ma) + 넋 (ni-kka) → 깊니까 (kka-ma-ni-kka)
(5) The Causative Form of Verbs

When stating an action that is a cause or a reason, the verb is presented in the causative form. The suffixes -어서 (a-seo) or -어서 (eo-seo) are added to the verb stem, e.g.

가다 (ga-da) → 가 + 아서 (a-seo) → 가서 (ga-seo)

to go

Because I go, etc.

The suffix -어서 is added if the verb stem ends in 아 (a) 오 (o), or 았 (ae). The suffix -어서 is used with all other verb stems.

Both causative and resulting actions are included in the same sentence. The cause is stated first, the result second. This sentence pattern is the equivalent of "Because..., I/he/they did..." It is often heard in response to a question asking 왜 (wa), the equivalent of the English "why." For example:

어제 왜 회사에 안 가셨어요?
(eo-je wae hoe-sa-e an gass-eo-yo?)

Why didn’t you go to work yesterday?

머리가 아파서 안 가셨어요.
(meo-ri-ga a-pa-seo an gass-eo-to.)

I didn’t go (to work) because I had a headache.

The clause 머리가 아파서 (meo-ri-ga a-pa-seo) / "because I had a headache" comes first, followed by the clause 안 가셨어요 (an-gass-eo-to) / "I didn’t go."

There is a rule regarding the use of the causative in casual conversation. When the causative verb is 이다 (i-da) / "to be" and follows a noun in the word order, 이다 becomes 이라서 (i-ra-seo) if the accompanying noun ends in a consonant, for example:

 сегодня 일요일이라서 회사에 안 가요.
(o-neul-eun il-yo-il-i-ra-seo hoe-sa-e an ga-yo.)

Since today is Sunday, I am not going to work.

If the noun ends in a vowel, 이다 becomes 라서 (ra-seo), e.g.

جم호씨는 휴가가서 여행 갔어요.
(jeong-ho-si-neun hyu-ga-ra-seo yeo-haeng gass-eo-yo.)

Since it’s a vacation, Jeong-Ho went traveling.

The English "because" and "since" are used interchangeably.

(6) The Adverb 벌로

The adverb 벌로 (byeol-lo) is the equivalent of the English "not particularly," "not really," and "not so much." The verb in the sentence, if one appears, is usually negative. The following exchange highlights 벌로 and its usage.

주말에 할 일이 많아요?
(ju-mal-e hal il-i man-a-yo?)

Do you have many things to do on the weekend?

아니요, 벌로 없어요.
(a-ni-o, byeol-lo eops-eo-yo.)

No, not really.

(7) The Particles ~로 and ~으로

The particles ~로 (ro) and ~으로 (eu-ro) have multiple usages. The particle ~로 is used with nouns ending in a vowel or the consonant 림. The particle ~으로 is used with nouns ending in all other consonants.
One meaning for ~로 and ~으로 is “by means of.” Examples:

한국말로 이야기해 보세요.
(han-gung-mal-lo i-ya-gi-hae bo-se-yo.)
Please speak in Korean.

한국까지 비행기로 10시간 걸려요.
(han-guk-kka-ji bi-haeng-gi-ro yeol-ssi-gan geol-lyeo-yo.)
It takes 10 hours to come to Korea by airplane.

In these sentences, the Korean language and an airplane are the methods by which the action is carried out.

Another meaning for the particles is “to (a place)” or “towards (a place),” as in 서울로 (seo-ul-lo) / “to Seoul,” or 은행으로 (eu-haeng-eu-ro) / “to the bank.” It is also used when giving directions, e.g.

사거리에서 오른쪽으로 가세요.
(sa-geo-ri-e-seo o-reun-jjog-eu-ro ga-se-yo.)
Please turn right (lit. go to the right) at the intersection.

The particle ~에 (e) also indicates “to” or “towards.” However, it is used when indicating a specific direction. The particles ~로 and ~으로 are used when the destination is more general.

### Positional Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>ppal-gan-saek</td>
<td>ppal-gan</td>
<td>ppal-gae-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>kka-man-saek</td>
<td>kka-man</td>
<td>kka-mae-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white</td>
<td>ha-yan-saek</td>
<td>ha-yan</td>
<td>ha-ya-yeo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue</td>
<td>pa-ran-saek</td>
<td>pa-ran</td>
<td>pa-rae-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>no-ran-saek</td>
<td>no-ran</td>
<td>no-ra-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green</td>
<td>cho-rok-saek</td>
<td>cho-rok-saek</td>
<td>cho-rok-saeg-i-e-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gray</td>
<td>hoe-saek</td>
<td>hoe-saek</td>
<td>hoe-saeg-i-e-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pink</td>
<td>bun-hong-saek</td>
<td>bun-hong-saek</td>
<td>bun-hong-saeg-i-e-yo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

Example:
the color red
a red apple
The apple is red.

(2) The Names of Shapes
사각형 ta-won-hyeong
원형 won-hyeong
동그라미 dong-geu-ra-mi
직사각형 jik-sa-ga-kyeong
정사각형 jeong-sa-ga-kyeong
정삼각형 jeong-sam-ga-kyeong

(3) The Days of the Week
월요일 wol-yo-il
화요일 hwa-yo-il
수요일 su-yo-il
목요일 mog-yo-il
금요일 geum-yo-il
토요일 to-yo-il
일요일 il-yo-il

Lesson 3: Asking Directions

주중 ju-jung
주말 ju-mal
지난 주 ji-nan-ju
이번 주 i-beon-jju
다음 주 da-eum-jju
지난 달 ji-nan-dal
이번 달 i-beon-ttal
다음 달 da-eum-ttal
매일 mae-il
매주 mae-ju
매월 mae-wol
매년 mae-nyeon
월말 wol-mal
연말 yeon-mal

The definitions in parentheses are the literal meanings of the Korean names for the days. They are named in honor of the sun, the moon, and the Five Elements according to Chinese philosophy. The seven-day week is a Western concept adopted by Korea and other East Asian countries.
Cultural Notes

(1) 아파트 (a-pa-teu)

The Korean 아파트, from the English “apartment,” refers to the ubiquitous high-rise residential buildings in Korea. (The difference between the 아파트 and the U.S. “apartment” is that the Korean word refers to the building, not a rental unit inside.) The 아파트 are usually built in multi-building complexes that are named after the construction company, as in 현대아파트 (hyeon-dae a-pa-teu) and 삼익아파트 (sam-ik a-pa-teu). Nearly a quarter of the South Korean population lives in Seoul and the majority live in 아파트.

(2) 집들이 (jip-deul-i)

When people move into a new house, they are expected by their relatives, friends, and neighbors to have a 집들이, a housewarming party. This is especially true for newlyweds, and the party gives the bride an opportunity to demonstrate her cooking skills. Guests often bring modest gifts of soap or laundry detergent. These represent prosperity, i.e. a small amount produces a limitless amount of soap bubbles.

(3) 색깔 (saek-kkal)

The word for “color” in Korean is 색 (saek) or 색깔 (saek-kkal). The words for the different colors are used as nouns, as predicates, or as modifiers. The word 파란색 (pa-ran-saek) means “blue,” but Koreans have traditionally used it to describe things that are either blue or green. An alternative word for green is 초록색 (cho-rok-saek), which literally means “grass green.”

Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 실례지만 이 근처에 지하철역이 어디 있습니다가?
sil-le-ji-man i geun-cheo-e ji-ha-cheol yeog-j eo-di it-seum-ni-kka?

(2) 여기에서 음행까지 얼마나 걸려요?
yeo-gi-e-seo eun-haeng-kka-ji meom-ni-kka?

(3) 여기에서 음행까지 시간이 얼마나 걸리니까?
yeo-gi-e-seo eun-haeng-kka-ji si-gan-i eol-ma-na geol-lim-ni-kka?

(4) 새로 이사하신 집은 어디세요?
sae-ro i-sa-ha-sin jib-eun eo-di-se-yo?

(5) 새로 이사하신 집이 어디세요? 다음에 드세요?
sae-ro i-sa-ha-sin jib-i eo-tteo-se-yo? ma-eum-e deu-se-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 아파트 단지 안에 상가가 있어서 아주 편리해요.
(2) 지난주 금요일에 이사하고 주말동안 대충 정리했어요.
(3) 그 벽등은 요즘 공사중이라 너무 복잡해서요.
(4) 체일범필 지하에 커피숍이 하나 있어요.
(5) 신호등을 건너서 오른쪽으로 가세요.

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) There is a computer on the desk.
(2) My bag is under the coffee table.
(3) The telephone is beside my bed.
(4) The windows are behind a sofa.
(5) There is a door in front of the living room.

4. Please write a paragraph describing your room.
Lesson 4: Asking the Date,
Day and Time
도영씨 언니는요?
do-yeong-ssi eon-ni-neun-yo?
How about your sister, Do-Yeong?

우리 언니도 79년생이에요.
uri eon-ni-do chil-sip-gu-nyeon-saeng-i-e-yo.
My sister was born in 1979 as well.

큰일 났네요.
keun-il nan-ne-yo.
I'm in a big trouble.

어제가 언니 생일이었는데 김빠 잊어버렸어요.
eo-je-ga eon-ni saeng-il-i-eun-de kkam-ppak ij-eo-beo-ryeoss-eeo-yo.
Yesterday was my sister's birthday and I completely forgot.

우리 오빠 생일하고 똑같네요.
u-ri o-ppa saeng-il-ha-go ttok-gan-ne-yo.
It's the same as my brother's birthday.

우리 오빠 생일도 7월 14일인데요.
u-ri o-ppa saeng-il-do chil-wol sip-sa-il-in-de-yo.
My brother's birthday is July 14th, too.

정말 인연이네요.
jeong-mal in-yeon-i-ne-yo.
What a coincidence. (lit. There really are acts of Providence.)

왜요? 무슨 날이에요?
wae-yo? mu-seun nal-i-e-yo?
Why? Is it a special day?
대학 동창회가 있는 날이에요.
daehak dongchanghoe-jajinneunnal-i-e-yo.
It's the day (my) college alumni reunion is on.

그래요? 출겨어요.
geuraeyo?joke-sseo-yo.
Really? Good for you.

새로 들어온 직원 환영회하고 시간이 겹쳐요.
sae-rodeuleoonjig-wonhwan-yeonghoe-haro-sigan-igyeop-chine-yo.
It falls on the same time as the new employee welcoming party.

그럼 어떻게 해요?
geureomtotteokehaeyo?
Then what should you do?

할 수 없지요.
halssueopjiyo.
There is nothing I can do.

회사 일이 먼저니까요.
hoesaillimeonjoeonkka-yo.
Business is the first thing (to be done).

벌써 퇴근시간이 거의 다 됐네요.
beollsseo toegeun-siganigoeundawaen-ne-yo.
It's already almost time to leave the office.

그럼 줄 알았어요.
geureoljjualass-eo-yo.
I knew it.

제 시계가 고장났나봐요.
jetesyegaga gojangnanbwa-yo.
It seems my watch is broken.

아직도 4시 10분밖에 안 됐어요.
a-jikdo ne-si sipbun-bakk-eandwaessenyo.
It's still only 4:10.

혹시 배터리가 다 된 거 아닙니까요?
hok-sibateori-gadaeondeongeo-anii-e-yo?
Do you think it might be because the battery is worn out?

그럼가봐요.
geureongabaeyo.
It might be.

짐에 꼭 때 시계방에 한번 들려 봐야겠어요.
jibegal-ttaseogyep pangehanbeondeul-leobwa-ya-gess-eo-yo.
I should stop by a watch repair shop when I go home.
대화  Model Conversations

(1)
이도영: 현주의, 오늘을 먹질이에요?
현주: 현주-주, o-neul-e myeo-chil-i-e-yo?
이도영: chil-wol sib-0-il-i-e-yo.
강현주: 아, 큰일났네요. 어제가 언니 생일이었는데 감사 및 어버웠어요.

(2)
강현주: 어서, 그러세요? 그럼 우리 외부 생일하고 독갈네요.
이도영: 우리 오빠 생일도 7월 14일인데요.
강현주: 우리 생일도 7월 11일이에요. 오빠, geu-reom u-ri o-ppa saeng-il-do chil-wol sip-sal-il-in-de-yo.
이도영: 그러세요? 오빠가 몇년생이세요?
강현주: 79년생이에요. 도영씨 인니는요?
이도영: 우리 멋지다 79년생이에요. 정말 인니네요.

Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

정현주: 네. 그런데 그날 새로 들어온 직원 환영회하고 시간이 걸쳐요.

이도영: 어서, 그러세요? 그럼 어떻게 해요?

정현주: 할 수 없어요. 일이 먼저야요.

(3)
이도영: 현주의, 지금 몇 시에요?
현주: 현주-주, ji-geum myeot-si-ye-yo?
이도영: 5시 45분이에요. 벌써 퇴근시간이 거의 다 됐네요.
이도영: 그럼 말았어요. 이제 기계가 고장났나봐요. 아직도 4시 10분밖에 안 됐어요.
강현주: 기계가 고장났나봐요. 이제 기계가 고장났나봐요. 아직도 4시 10분밖에 안 됐어요.
이도영: 그런가봐요. 짐 때 시계방에 한번 들려 보아요.


정현주: 축시 베타리가 다 된 거 아니에요?
이도영: 찰스 베타리가 다 된 거 아니에요?

정현주: 찰스 베타리가 다 된 거 아니에요?
이도영: 그러ставка. 짐 때 시계방에 한번 들려 보아요.

English Translation

(1)
Lee: Hyun-Ju, what is the date today?
Jung: It’s July 15th.
Lee: Oh, I’m in big trouble. Yesterday was my sister’s birthday and I completely forgot.
Jung: Wow, is that right? Then your sister’s birthday is the same as my brother’s. My brother’s birthday is also July 14th.
Lee: Really? What year was he born in?
Jung: He was born in 1979. How about your sister, Do-Yeong?
Lee: My sister was born in 1979 as well. What a coincidence.

(2)
Jung: Do-Yeong, what day is August 7th?
Lee: It’s Friday. Why? Is it a special day?
Jung: It’s the day my college alumni reunion is on.
Lee: Really? Good for you.
Jung: Yes, but it conflicts with the reception for new employees.
Lee: Uh uh . . . really? Then what should you do?
Jung: Nothing I can do. My work is my first priority.

(3)
Lee: Hyeon-Ju, what time is it now?
Jung: It’s 5:45. It’s already almost time to go home.
Lee: I knew it. It seems my watch is broken. It’s still only 4:10 on my watch.
Jung: Do you think it might be because the battery is worn out?
Lee: I think so. I should stop by a watch repair shop when I go home.

Nouns & Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>금요일</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>날</td>
<td>day, date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학</td>
<td>college</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도영서</td>
<td>Do-Yeong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>동창회, dong-chang-hoe</td>
<td>alumni assembly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무소 날</td>
<td>mu-seun nal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배터리 ba-tee-ri</td>
<td>special day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>생일 saeng-il</td>
<td>battery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시간 si-gan</td>
<td>birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시계 si-ge</td>
<td>time, hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시계 방 si-ge ppang.</td>
<td>watch, clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어제 eon-je</td>
<td>watch repair store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어머니 eon-ni</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오늘 o-neul</td>
<td>woman’s older sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오빠 o-ppa</td>
<td>today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이도영 i-do-yeong</td>
<td>woman’s older brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>인연 in-yeon</td>
<td>Do-Yeong Lee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일 il</td>
<td>act of Providence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정현주 jeong-hyeon-ju</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지금 ji-geum</td>
<td>Hyeon-Ju Jeong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>직원 jip-won</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>집 jip</td>
<td>employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>퇴근시간 toe-geun-si-gan</td>
<td>house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현주씨 hyeon-ju-si</td>
<td>time to leave the office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>환영회 hwan-yeong-hoe</td>
<td>Hyeon-Ju</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>회사 hae-sa</td>
<td>welcoming party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79년생 chil-sip-gu-nyeon-saeng</td>
<td>company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4시 10분 ne-si sip-bun</td>
<td>a person born in 1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5시 45분 da-seot-si sa-sib-o-bun</td>
<td>4:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7월 14일 chil-wol sip-sa-il</td>
<td>5:45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July 14th</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BEGINNER’S KOREAN

Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

7월 15일 chil-wol sib-o-il
8월 7일 pal-wol chil-il

July 15th
August 7th

Verbs

걸치다 gyeop-chi-da to overlap
고장나다 go-jang-na-da to be broken
ta 되다 da doc-da to be worn out, to be all done
d러 보다 deul-leo-bo-da to stop by
d어보다 deul-eo-o-da to enter
t록 같다 ttok-gat-da to be the same
있다 it-da to exist, to have
잎바리다 ij-eo-beo-ri-da to forget
줄다 jo-ta to be good
큰밀니다 keun-il-na-da to be in trouble
할 수 없다 hal sue op-da cannot help, there is no other choice

Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions

거의 geo-ui almost
그런데 geu-reon-de but
짭 밥 kkam-ppak completely
d다 da all
먼저 meon-jeo ahead, first
며칠 myeo-cil what date?
몇 년생 myeon-nyeon-saeng what year was one born?
몇 시 myeot-si what time?
무슨 요일 mu-seun yo-il what day?
벌써 beol-sseo already
새로 sae-ro newly
아직도 a-jik-do yet, still
어떻게 eo-teo-ke how
왜 wae why
우리 u-ri our
## Vocabulary Grammar

### (I) Numbers and Counters

#### A. Numbers

There are two sets of numbers used in Korean: the native Korean numbers and Sino-Korean numbers. Some counters take native Korean numbers, and others take Sino-Korean numbers. Some native Korean numbers have two forms, depending on whether they are followed by a counter or used in isolation. Since native Korean numbers count from 1 to 99, all factors of 100 use the Sino-Korean number system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
<th>Native Korean</th>
<th>Native Korean (with counter)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>일 il</td>
<td>한 han</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>이 i</td>
<td>두 du</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>삼 sam</td>
<td>세 se</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>사 sa</td>
<td>네 ne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>오 o</td>
<td>다섯 da-seot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>육 yuk</td>
<td>여섯 yeo-seot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>칠 chil</td>
<td>일곱 il-gop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>팔 pal</td>
<td>여덟 yeo-deol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>구 gu</td>
<td>아홉 a-hop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>십 sip</td>
<td>열 yeol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
<td>열한 yeo-ha-na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>십이 sib-I</td>
<td>열두 yeo-dul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>십삼 sib-sam</td>
<td>열세 yeo-set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>십사 sib-sa</td>
<td>열네 yeo-net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>십오 sib-o</td>
<td>열다섯 yeo-da-seot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>십육 sim-nyuk</td>
<td>열여섯 yeo-yo-seot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
<th>Native Korean</th>
<th>Native Korean (with counter)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>십칠 sip-chil</td>
<td>열일곱 yeol-il-gop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>십팔 sip-pal</td>
<td>열여덟 yeo-yo-deol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>십구 sip-gu</td>
<td>열아홉 yeo-yo-a-hop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>이십 i-sip</td>
<td>스무 seu-mul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>이십일 i-sib-il</td>
<td>스무하나 seu-mul-ha-na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>이십이 i-sib-i</td>
<td>스무둘 seu-mul-du</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>이십삼 i-sip-sam</td>
<td>스무셋 seu-mul-set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>이십사 i-sip-sa</td>
<td>스무넷 seu-mul-net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>이십오 i-sib-o</td>
<td>스무다섯 seu-mul-da-seot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>이십육 i-sim-nyuk</td>
<td>스무여섯 seu-mul-yo-seot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>이십칠 i-sip-chil</td>
<td>스무일곱 seu-mul-il-gop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>이십팔 i-sip-pal</td>
<td>스무여덟 seu-mul-yo-deol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>이십구 i-sip-gu</td>
<td>스무아홉 seu-mul-a-hop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>삼십 sam-sip</td>
<td>세흔 seo-reun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>사십 sa-sip</td>
<td>마흔 ma-heun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>오십 o-sip</td>
<td>쉬십 swin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>육십 yuk-sip</td>
<td>여십 yeo-sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>쌀십 chil-sip</td>
<td>일십 il-heun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>팔십 pal-sip</td>
<td>여십 yeo-deun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>구십 gu-sip</td>
<td>아흔 a-heun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

B. Noun Counters

Counters must be used when indicating a specific number of people, items, or other nouns, e.g. four men, two pens, or three months. Different counters are used for different entities or objects.

Whether native Korean or Sino-Korean numbers are used depends on the counter. Some counters use both, particularly when the number is 20 or greater. However, the native Korean numbers are generally used when the number indicates an amount. Sino-Korean numbers are used when the number is part of a numbered order, such as the chapters in a book, the stories in a building, or the months in a year.

Native-Korean numbers tend to be used with counters that have names rooted in the Korean language. Sino-Korean numbers tend to be used with counters that have names derived from other languages, such as Chinese. In other words, native-Korean numbers go with native-Korean counters, while Sino-Korean numbers are used with Sino-Korean counters.
The general word order when using counters is the noun first, the number second, the counter last. For example:

커피 (keo-pi) + 한 (han) + 잔 (jan) → 커피 한 잔 (keo-pi han jan)
coffee one (counter for cup) one cup of coffee

책 (chaek) + 세 (se) + 권 (gwon) → 책 세 권 (chaek se gwon)
book three (counter for book) three books

I. Counters with Native Korean Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cnt</th>
<th>Srp</th>
<th>Srp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>개</td>
<td>gae</td>
<td>items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고</td>
<td>gwa</td>
<td>number of lessons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과목</td>
<td>gwa-mok</td>
<td>courses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>권</td>
<td>gwon</td>
<td>volumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달</td>
<td>dal</td>
<td>months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마리</td>
<td>ma-ri</td>
<td>animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>명</td>
<td>myeong</td>
<td>persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사람</td>
<td>sa-ram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>린</td>
<td>bong</td>
<td>times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>별</td>
<td>byeong</td>
<td>bottles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분</td>
<td>bun</td>
<td>persons (honorific)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시</td>
<td>si</td>
<td>o'clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시간</td>
<td>si-gan</td>
<td>hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>상자</td>
<td>sang-ja</td>
<td>boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잔</td>
<td>jan</td>
<td>cups, glasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장</td>
<td>jang</td>
<td>sheets</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. Counters with Sino-Korean Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cnt</th>
<th>Srp</th>
<th>Srp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>과</td>
<td>gwa</td>
<td>numbered lessons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>년</td>
<td>nyocon</td>
<td>years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달러</td>
<td>dal-leo</td>
<td>dollars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마일</td>
<td>ma-il</td>
<td>miles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분</td>
<td>beon</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분</td>
<td>bun</td>
<td>minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cnt</th>
<th>Srp</th>
<th>Srp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>센트</td>
<td>sen-teu</td>
<td>cents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>원</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>Korean won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>월</td>
<td>wol</td>
<td>months of the year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일</td>
<td>il</td>
<td>days of the month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화번호</td>
<td>jeon-hw-beon-ho</td>
<td>phone numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>축구</td>
<td>cheung</td>
<td>layers, stories, floors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파운드</td>
<td>pa-un-deu</td>
<td>pounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학년</td>
<td>hang-nyeon</td>
<td>school year, grade</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) The Noun-modifying Form (Relative Clauses)

An example of a relative clause in an English phrase is the “who is going” in “a person who is going.” In Korean, such a phrase is translated by putting the particles -는 (neun), -은 (eun), or -이 (ni) after the relative clause. There is no relative pronoun in Korean as exist in English. The Korean translation of the English phrase “a person who is going” is 가는 사람 (ga-neun sa-ram).

Korean relative clauses have the following characteristics:

a. The relative clause comes first, the clause particle second, and the modified noun last. This is true regardless of the tense. The phrase 가는 사람 begins with 가 / "to go," followed by the particle 는 / (the functional equivalent of “is ... ~ing”), and ending with 사람 / "a person."

b. A relative clause in the present tense uses the particles -는, -은, and 이. The particle 는 follows a relative clause using an active verb (e.g. 먹다 [meok-da] / "to eat"). The particles -은 and 이 follow a relative clause that uses a descriptive verb, such as 작다 (jak-da) / "to be small." The particle -은 is used if the clause ends in a consonant. The particle 이 is used if it ends in a vowel, such as 예쁘다 (ye-ppeu-da) / "to be pretty."
Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

(3) Question Words and Indefinite Pronouns

Question Words

When asking a question, always stress the question word in the sentence. The Korean question words are listed below with sample sentences.

누가  who (subject)  누가 간호원이세요?
누구  who  누구를 찾으세요?
무슨  what kind of; what  무슨 일을 하세요?
무엇  what  무엇을 좋아하세요?
뭐  what (colloquial)  뭐가 제일 어려우세요?
어느  which  어느 나라 사람이세요?
어떤  what  어떤 것을 좋아하세요?
무  what   

The chart below shows the various kinds of verbs with the appropriate particles in the relative clause forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Verb</th>
<th>Descriptive Verb</th>
<th>Id-bal da / eop-bal da</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past / Completed</th>
<th>Present / Ongoing</th>
<th>Prospective / Unrealized</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>적은 meong-eun -en</td>
<td>적은 meong-neun</td>
<td>적은 meong-eul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작던 jak-deon</td>
<td>작던 jak-eul</td>
<td>작던 jig-won-i-deon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적었던 mas-it-deon</td>
<td>적였던 mas-in-deon</td>
<td>적웠던 mas-eop-deon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적은 ye-ppeu-deon</td>
<td>적은 ye-ppeun</td>
<td>적은 jig-won-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적은 ye-ppeu-deon</td>
<td>적은 ye-ppeun</td>
<td>적은 jig-won-in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

119
Lesson 4: Asking the Date, Day and Time

Indefinite Pronouns

Question words, with the exception of 왜 (wae) / “why,” can also be used as indefinite pronouns. Indefinite pronouns are not stressed in spoken Korean. The indefinite pronouns, their English equivalents, and sample sentences are listed below.

누가    someone/anyone
nu-ga       누가 왔어요.

무슨    some kind of
mu-seun   무슨 날씨가 나요.

무엇    something/anything
mu-eot     (original form of 뭔)

어느    some [noun]
eo-neu    어느 날 갑자기 귀가 잘 안 들었어요.

누구    someone/anyone
nu-gu     누구를 데려고 올 거예요.

언제    when
eon-je    언제 한국에 가세요?

어디    where
eo-di     어디 사세요?

eo-di sa-se-yo
Where do you live?

어떻게    how
eo-tteo-
ke     어떻게 어떻게 가요?

bu-san-e eo-ttewo-ke ga-yo
How can I get to Pusan?

어떤    what kind of
eo-tteon     어떤 사람을 좋아하세요?

eo-tteon sa-ram-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo
What kind of people do you like?

언제    when
eon-je    언제 한국에 가세요?

eon-je han-gug-e ga-se-yo
When are you leaving for Korea?

얼마나    how long/many/much
eol-ma-
na     한국에 얼마나 계실 거예요?

han-gung-e eol-ma-na gye-sil geo-ye-yo
How long are you staying in Korea?

왜    why
wae     왜 한국에 가세요?

wae han-gung-e ga-se-yo
Why are you going to Korea?
A sentence clause using the verb + ︶형(actions) or ︶형(actions) is always followed by another sentence clause. The second clause describes what happened during the first clause. For example:

한국에 갔 때 비행기를 타고 갔어요.
(han-gug-e gal-ttae bi-haeng-gi-reul ta-go gass-eo-yo)
When I went to Korea, I went by airplane.

These two actions occurred simultaneously. However, when the second action occurs in the midst of the first action (or after it), the verb stem changes to the stem in the past tense form. For example:

한국에 갔을 때 할머니를 처음 만났어요.
(han-gug-e gass-eul ttae hal-meo-ni-reul cheo-eum man-nass-eo-yo)
When I went to Korea, I met my grandmother for the first time.

Note that 기, the verb stem for the Korean equivalent of “to go,” becomes the of 기, the Korean equivalent of “went,” in the first clause.

(5) The Particles ︶형(actions) & ︶형(actions), and ︶형(actions) & ︶형(actions)

The particle ︶형(actions) (ha-go) is the equivalent of the English “and.” It is the conjunction between two nouns. It is generally used in everyday speech and informal writing. Using ︶행(actions), the Korean equivalent of “Jeong-Ho and Michael” is 정호행 마이클 (jeong-ho-ha-go ma-je-keul).

The particles ︶형(actions) and ︶형(actions) are also used to say “and” in informal situations. The particle ︶형(actions) is used after nouns that end in a vowel, while ︶형(actions) is used after nouns that end in a consonant. Using ︶행(actions), the Korean equivalent of “Jeong-Ho and Michael” is 정호행 마이클 (jeong-ho-ha-go ma-je-keul).
In formal situations, the particles 〜와 (wa) and 〜과 (gwa) are used. One uses 〜와 when the noun ends in a vowel, and 〜과 when the noun ends in a consonant. Using 〜와, the Korean equivalent of Jeong-Ho and Michael is 정호와 마이클 (jeong-ho-wa ma-i-keul).

(6) The Particles 〜니, 〜이나, and 〜밖에

The particles 〜니 (na) and 〜이나 (i-na) indicate surprise. They are used when a quantity is significantly greater than one’s expectations. The particle 〜니 is used when the preceding expression ends in a vowel. One uses 〜이나 when the expression ends in a consonant.

The particle 〜밖에 (bakk-e) is used when indicating that a quantity is smaller in comparison to another. One may also hear it when a quantity is less than expected. The second half of the following exchange demonstrates its use:

저는 형제가 다섯 명이나 있어요.
(jeo-neun hyeong-je-ga da-seot-myeong-i-na iss-eo-yo)
I have five siblings.

저는 두 명밖에 없어요.
(jeo-neun du-myeong-bakk-e eops-eo-yo)
I have only two.

Note that the noun construction 두 명 (“two siblings” in this context) comes first. The particle 〜밖에 comes second, and the negative form of the verb follows. (The word 〜이어요 literally means “don’t have.”) All sentences featuring 〜밖에 follow this pattern.

Further Study

(1) How to tell time

Time

한시 han-si 1 o’clock
d우시 du-si 2 o’clock
세시 se-si 3 o’clock
네시 ne-si 4 o’clock
d섯시 da-seot-si 5 o’clock
여섯시 yeo-seot-si 6 o’clock
일곱시 il-gop-si 7 o’clock
여덟시 yeo-deol-ssi 8 o’clock
아홉시 a-hop-si 9 o’clock
열시 yeol-ssi 10 o’clock
열한시 yeol-han-si 11 o’clock
열두시 yeol-ttu-si 12 o’clock

Minutes

오분 o-bun 5 minutes
십분 sip-bun 10 minutes
십오분 sib-o-bun 15 minutes
이십분 i-sip-bun 20 minutes
이십오분 i-sib-o-bun 25 minutes
삼십분 sam-sip-bun 30 minutes
반 ban 30 minutes
삼십오분 sam-sib-o-bun 35 minutes
사십분 sa-sip-bun 40 minutes
사십오분 sa-sib-o-bun 45 minutes
오십분 o-sip-bun 50 minutes
오십오분 o-sib-o-bun 55 minutes
Other Time Expressions

오전 o-jeon A.M.
오후 o-hu P.M.
새벽 sae-byek dawn
아침 a-chim morning
정침 jeom-sim afternoon
저녁 jeo-nyeok evening
밤 bam night

(2) The Days of the Month

1st 일일 il-il
2nd 이일 i-il
3rd 삼일 sam-il
4th 사일 sa-il
5th 오일 o-il
6th 육일 yug-il
7th 칠일 chil-il
8th 팔일 pal-il
9th 구일 gu-il
10th 십일 sib-il
11th 십일 삼일 il-il
12th 십일 이일 i-il
13th 십일 삼일 il-il
14th 십일 사일 sa-il
15th 십일 오일 o-il
16th 십일 육일 yug-il
17th 십일 칠일 chil-il
18th 십일 팔일 pal-il
19th 십일 구일 gu-il
20th 이십일 i-sib-il
21st 이십일 i-sib-il
22nd 이십일 i-sib-il

(3) The Days of the Week

크제 geu-je / 그제께 geu-jeo-kke the day before yesterday
어제 eo-je yesterday
오늘 o-neul today
내일 nae-il tomorrow
오레 mo-re the day after tomorrow
문화적 참고사항 Cultural Note

Birthday celebrations

Birthday celebrations are very important in Korean culture; they are seen as celebrations of a person’s life. The first birthday is the day one is born. (Koreans, unlike Westerners, consider an infant a one-year-old at birth.)

An important birthday celebration is held on the day of 백일 (baek-il), the 100th day after the baby is born. There is a small family celebration with wine, fruit, rice cakes, and other delicacies. Rice cakes are traditionally given to one hundred neighbors, reflecting the belief that this will grant the child a long, healthy life. The rice cakes are presented in a bowl, which is returned to the family containing, yam, rice, or money. The yam signifies a wish that the child may enjoy a long life. The rice and money signify a wish for the prosperity of the child.

The most important birthdays are the first and the sixtieth. Family and friends are invited over, and the occasion is marked with the setting of a large table where food, wine, and gifts are set. Another large celebration commemorates a person’s seventieth birthday.

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following.

(1) 오늘은 머칠이에요? o-neul-i myeo-chil-i-e-yo?
(2) 내일은 무슨 요일이에요? nae-il-i mu-seun yo-il-i-e-yo?
(3) 지금 몇시예요? ji-geum myeot-si-ye-yo?
(4) 생일이 몇월 머칠이세요? saeng-il-i myeot-wol myeo-chil-i-se-yo?
(5) 내일은 몇개월 몇일이세요? nae-il-i-myeo-chil-i-se-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English.

(1) 이재가 언제 생일이었는데 갑백 앞이었어요.
   eo-je-ga eon-ni saeng-il-i-eun-de kkan-ppak ij-eo-beo-ryeossa-eo-yo.
(2) 새로 들어온 직원 환영회하고 시간이 갈까지네요.
   sae-ro deul-eo-on jig-won hwan-yeong-hoe-ha-go si-gan-i gyeop-chi-ne-yo.
(3) 내일은 대학 동창회가 있는 날이에요.
   nae-il-i-eun dae-hak dong-chang-hoe-ga in-nun nal-i-e-yo.
(4) 벌써 되근시간이 거의 다 왔네요.
   beol-sseo toe-geun-si-gan-i geo-i da dwaen-ne-yo.
(5) 집에 갈 때 시간에 한번 들려 볼어졌어요.
   jib-e gal-ttae si-gye-ppang-e han-beon deul-leo bwa-ya-gess-eo-yo.
(6) 혹시 밤따리가 다 된 거 아니에요?
   hok-si bae-teo-ri-ga da doen geo a-ni-e-yo?

3. Please write the following in Korean:

(1) July 16th, 1997
(2) 12:30 P.M.
4. Please write a paragraph describing your daily/weekly schedule.

Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call

withstanding, have you forgotten which time you went to bed?
This is she. Excuse me, but who is this?

Hello. Is this Miss. Hyeon-Ju Jung’s residence?
Yes, it is.

Excuse me, but may I talk to Hyeon-Ju if she is home now?
This is she. Excuse me, but who is this?

This is Do-Yeong Lee.
I am Hyeon-Ju Jeong.
내일 4시에 직원회의 있는 거 다들 알고 있지요?
nae-il ne-si-e jig-won-hoe-ui in-neun-geo da-deul al-go it-ji-yo?
Everyone knows there is a staff meeting tomorrow at 4:00, right?

어제 다 연락했는데 강재은씨만 아직 연락이 안 됐어요.
eo-je da yeol-la-kaen-neun-de gang-jae-eun-ssi-man a-jik yeol-lag-i
I contacted everyone yesterday, but Ms. Jae-Eun Kang has not been
contacted yet.

신호는 가는데 전화를 안 받아요.
sin-ho-neun ga-neun-de jeon-hwa-reul an bad-a-yo.
The telephone is ringing but no one answers.

그럼 지금 다시 한번 더 걸어 보실래요?
geu-reom ji-geum da-si han-beon deo geol-eo bo-sil-lae-yo?
Then would you please call her once again now?

네, 그리기요.
ne, geu-reo-ji-yo.
OK, I will do so.

자동 응답기가 받는데요.
ja-dong-eung-dap-gi-ga ban-neun-de-yo.
The answering machine is picking up.

그냥 메시지를 남길까요?
geu-nyang me-si-ji-reul nam-gil-kka-yo?
Should I just leave a message?

그럼세요.
geu-reo-se-yo.
Please do.
오늘은 좀 늦을 거라고 했어요.
o-neul-eun jom neuj-eul kkeo-ra-go haess-eo-yo.
He said he would be a little late today.

그럼 제가 8시쯤 다시 전화해도 될까요?
doel-kka-yo?
Then is it OK if I call back again around 8:00 P.M.?
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call

정현주: 네, 안녕하세요.
ne, an-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo.

(2)
정현주: 도영씨, 내일 4시에 직원회의 있는 거 다들 알고 있지요?
do-yeong-sii, nae-il ne-si-e jig-won-hoe-ui in-neun geo da-deul al-go it-ji-yo?

이도영: 어제 다 연락했는데 강재은씨만 아직 연락이 안 됐어.

정현주: 그럼 지금 다시 한번 더 걸어 보실래요?
geu-reom ji-geum da-si han-beon deo geol-te bo-sil-lae-yo?

이도영: 네, 그러지요.... (따르릉, 따르릉)... 자동 응답기가 받는데요. 그냥 메시지를 날길까요?
ze, geu-reo-ji-yo. (ta-reu-reung, tta-reu-reung) ja-dong eung-dap-gi-ga ban-neun-de-yo. geu-nyang me-si-ji-reul nam-gil-kka-yo?

정현주: 그래요. 전화 메시지 받으면 사무실로 바로 전화하라고 해 주세요.
geu-reo-se-yo. jeon-hwa me-si-ji bad-cu-myeon sa-mu-sil-lo ba-ro jeon-hwa-ha-ra-go hae ju-se-yo.

이도영: 알겠습니다.
al-get-seum-ni-da.

(3)
정현주: 여보세요? 가기 이경호씨 막이지요?
yeo-bo-se-yo? geo-gi i-jeong-ho-ssi daeg-i-ji-yo?

이도영: 네, 그러세요. 그렇게 만 누구세요?
ne, geu-reom-de-yo. sil-lye-ji-man nu-gu-se-yo.

정현주: 저는 정현주라고 하는데요. 혹시 이경호씨 지금 계시 면 좀 바꿔주시겠어요?
jeo-neun jeong-hyeon-ju-ra-go ha-neun-de-yo. hok-si i-jeong-ho-ssi ji-geum gye-si-myeon jom ba-kkwo ju-si-gess-eo-yo?

이도영: 어머, 현주언니. 저 정은이에요. 안녕하세요?
eo-meo, hyeon-ju-eon-ni. jeo jeong-eun-i-e-yo. an-nyeong-ha-se-yo?

정현주: 아니오. 괜찮아요. 제가 나중에 다시 전화할게요.
a-ni-o, gwaen-chan-a-yo. jae-eun-na-jung-e da-si jeon-hwa-hal-kke-yo.

정현주: 저는 정현주라고 하는데요. 혹시 이경호씨 지금 시점에 들어오는지 아세요?
jeo-neun jeong-hyeon-ju-ra-go ha-neun-de-yo. hok-si i-jeong-ho-ssi ji-geum gye-si-myeon ju-si-gess-eo-yo?

이도영: 잘 모르겠습니다. 통신 채팅 6시쯤에 봅는데요. 오늘은 좀 늦을 거라고 했어요.
jal mo-reu-gen-neun-de-yo. bo-tong jae-yoek yeo-seot-si-jjeum o-neun-de, o-neul-eun jom neuj-eul geol-ra-ga haess-eo-yo.

정현주: 그래요? 그럼 제가 8시쯤 다시 전화해도 될까요?

이도영: 네, 그러세요. 안녕히 계세요.
ne, geu-reo-se-yo. an-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo.
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call

(1)
Jung: (ring, ring) Hello.
Lee: Hello. Is this Miss. Hyeon-Ju Jung’s residence?
Jung: Yes, it is.
Lee: I am sorry, but may I talk to Hyeon-Ju if she is available now?
Jung: This is she. Excuse me, but who am I talking with?
Lee: Hyeon-Ju, This is Do-Yeong Lee. I am sorry for calling you so early in the morning.
Jung: Ah, Do-Yeong. It’s OK. By the way, what is going on?
Lee: Do you happen to know the department manager Hyeon-Jun Kim’s cell phone number? I urgently need to contact him, but I don’t have his phone number.
Jung: Yes, I know. Please wait for a moment. Oh, here it is. It’s 011-399-3974.
Lee: Thank you. Good-bye.
Jung: OK, Good-bye.

(2)
Jung: Do-Yeong, everyone knows there is a staff meeting tomorrow at 4:00, right?
Lee: I contacted everyone yesterday, but I couldn’t get a hold of Ms. Jae-Eun Kang. The phone is ringing but no one answers.
Jung: Then would you please call her once again now?
Lee: OK, I will. (ring, ring...) The answering machine is picking up. Should I just leave a message?
Jung: Yes. Please say to call back to the office as soon as she gets the message.
Lee: OK, alright.

(3)
Jung: Hello, is this Mr. Jeong-Ho Lee’s residence?
Lee: Yes, it is. Excuse me, but who is this?
Jung: This is Hyeon-Ju Jung. May I please talk to Jeong-Ho Lee if he is home now?
Lee: Ah, Hyeon-Ju. This is Jeong-Eun. How are you? My brother is not home now. What shall I tell him when he comes home?
Jung: No, it’s OK. I will just call him again later. Do you know, by any chance, when he will be back home?
Lee: I am not sure. He usually comes home around 6:00 P.M., but he said he would be a little late today.
Jung: Did he? Then is it OK if I call back again around 8:00 P.M.?
Lee: Yes, please. Good-bye.
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call

To be late
To return home, to enter
Not to know
To change, to switch (telephones)
To receive
To know
To contact (hon.)
To come
To make a phone call
To make a phone call (hon.)
To be sorry

Adverbs / Conjunctions

There
Just
In a hurry
Later
All
Again
More
Ring ring....
A.s.a.p.
In general
Excuse me but.... I am sorry but...
Yet
Early
Well
For a moment
Please
Now
Once
By any chance, just in case
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call

§*3 Grammar

(1) Indirect quotation

Directly or indirectly, a speaker often passes along what others have said. An indirect narrative occurs when someone else's words are passed along with modification. It takes the basic form of [Quoted Sentence + ~고 하다 (go ha-da)].

a. to quote a general statement that is currently in circulation, use ~고 하다 (go ha-da) with the appropriate sentence ending, such as ...고 해요/합니다 (...go ha-e-yo/ham-ni-da).

b. to quote a specific statement in the past, use ~고 했다 (go haet-da) with the appropriate sentence ending, such as ...고 했다요/했습니다 (...go haet-seo-yo/haet-seum-ni-da)

c. When the quoted statement is/was said by one who is respected, the honorific forms of ~고 하다 (ha-da) are used. The sentence ending ...고 하세요/하십시오 (...go ha-se-yo/ha-sim-ni-da) is used for the present tense. The ending ...고 하셨어요/하셨습니다 (...go ha-syeoss-seo-yo/ha-syeot-seum-ni-da) is used for the past tense.

The quoted statement also takes the different endings appropriate in the polite style, depending on the sentence type of the quote. Declarative sentences, questions, commands, and proposals take different forms, as do past and present.

Declarative sentences that are quoted use a variation of the sentence ending ~다고 해요 (da-go hae-yo). There are four types of declarative sentences used in quotations: those using an active verb stem, those using a descriptive verb stem, those using a copula, and those describing a past event. The sentence types and their endings:

active verb stems ending in a consonant
~느다고 해요 (neun-da-go hae-yo)

descriptive verb stems
~다고 해요 (da-go hae-yo)
copula (이)
~라고 해요 (ra-go hae-yo)
past events ending
~았다고 해요 (at-da-ga-hae-yo) or
~었다고 해요 (eot-da-go hae-yo)

In colloquial speech, ~다고 해요 may be shortened to ~대요 when quoting sentences that use active verbs or describe past events.

Questions that are quoted use a variation of the sentence ending ~느

n요 (neu-nya-go hae-yo). As with declarative sentences, there are four types of questions used in quotations: those using active verb stems, those using descriptive verb stems, those using a copula, and those describing a past event. The question types and their endings:

active verb stems
~느뇨고 해요 (neu-nya-go hae-yo)
descriptive verb stems
~ 느뇨고 해요 ([eu-] nya-go hae-yo)
copula
~ 느뇨고 해요 ([eu-] nya-go hae-yo)
past events
~았느뇨고 해요 (at-neu-nya-go hae-yo) or
~었느뇨고 해요 (eot-neu-nya-go hae-yo)

In colloquial speech, the ending can be shortened to ~느뇨 (neun

nyae-yo) with active verb stems, to ~느뇨 (neun

nyae-yo) with
descriptive verb stems and copulas, and to ~있네요 (eot-nyae-yo) with questions that describe past events.

Commands and requests that are quoted use a variation of the sentence ending ~라고 해요 (ra-go hae-yo).

Verbs stems ending in a vowel use ~라고 해요 (ra-go hae-yo), while those ending in a consonant use ~으라고 해요 (eu-ra-go hae-yo). In colloquial speech, the endings are shortened to ~아요 (rae-yo) with verb stems that end in a vowel, and to ~어요 (eu-rae-yo) with stems that end in a consonant.

With a proposal, the ending ~자고 해요 (ja-go hae-yo) is used with all verb stems. In colloquial speech, it can be shortened to ~자요 (jae-yo).

The act of speaking may be indicated by a different verb than 하다 (ha-da) if the specific kind of speech is specified. Examples include ~니/라/라고 전해주세요 (da-ra-go jeon-hae-ju-se-yo) “please convey/pass along the message that...,” ~느니/으니/하니/는데 놀여봐요 (neu-nya/eu-nya-go mul-eo-bwass-co-yo) “asked if/whether...,” and ~는/으니가 가르쳐 줄어요 (eu-ra-go ga-ru-cho jwoss-co-yo) “introduced someone to...”

(2) Honorific Expressions

Honorific expressions in Korean are systematized. Honorific forms appear in hierarchical address/reference terms and titles, some commonly used nouns and verbs, the pronoun system, particles, and verb suffixes. Sentences in Korean require knowledge of one’s social relationships to the listener or the one about whom is speaking in terms of age, social status, and kinship. The following table is a summary of honorific forms.
Additionally, one uses the honorific suffixes ~[eu]-si and ~[eu]-se when discussing someone who is to be referred to with respect, such as a family elder, a business superior, a distant peer, or a stranger. The article ~kke-seo (kke-seo), at one's discretion, may be used instead of ~[eu]- (i) or ~[eu]- (ga) in order to show an additional level of respect to the subject of the sentence, regardless of whether the sentence subject is the person to whom one is speaking. The sentence endings ~a-e-yo (a/eo-yo) and ~seun-ni-da (seum-ni-da) show respect for the listener.

Examples of the different levels of honorific suffixes in use:

Plain

동생이 교회에 가.

dong-saeng-i gyo-hoe-e- ga.
My younger sibling goes to church.

Listener Honorific

동생이 교회에 가요.

dong-saen-i gyo-hoe-e ga-yo.
My younger sibling goes to church.

Subject Honorific

 narzoi keo-ke-seo gyo-hoe-e ga-syeo.
My grandmother goes to church.

Subject and Listener Honorific

 narzoi keo-ke-seo gyo-hoe-e ga-se-yo.
My grandmother goes to church.

(3) Name + [eu]- (i)

Korean names are composed of a family name followed by a given name. When a person is referred to in a friendly, intimate manner by given name, the suffix ~[eu]- (i) is added to the name (without a title such as [eu]- (ssi)) if it ends in a consonant, as in 현주 (hyeon-jun-i) and 현린 (hyeon-ri). For given names ending in a vowel, no suffix is added, as in 정호 (jeong-ho) and 현주 (hyeon-ju). This rule does not apply to foreign names.

(4) ~neun-de-yo/~[eu]-de-yo

Background information

The sentence endings ~neun-de-yo and ~[eu]-de-yo are used when a speaker presents background information. The speaker is conveying information in an open-ended manner that will allow the listener to figure out what to do next. This is often a polite way of expressing things. For example:

A: 정호 있어요? (jeong-ho iss-co-yo?) “Is Jeong-Ho there?”
B: 아니오, 지금 집에 없네요. (a-ni-o, ji-geum jib-e eom-neun-de-yo.) “No, he is not at home now.”
Speaker B uses 임는데요 (eom-neun-de-yo) to respond instead of 임어요 (eops-eo-yo). The response 임는데요 invites speaker A to follow up with another statement or action.

The endings also allow one to handle a potentially troublesome situation, such as disagreement, denial, or rejection, with diplomacy. They permit both parties to save face in a discussion. For example:

A: 오늘 둘드에 같이 갈래요? (o-neul ssi-wol-deu-e ga-chi gable-yo?) “Will you go to Sea World with me today?”

B: 미안하지만 오늘은 다른 약속이 있는데요. (mi-an-ha-ji-man o-neul-eun da-reun yak-sog-i in-neun-de-yo.) “I am sorry, but I have another appointment today.”

Although speaker B is clearly declining the invitation (here, because of a schedule conflict), the use of 임는데요 helps avoid directly rejecting speaker A.

(5) ~지요? (ji-yo?) Tag question

The question ending ~지요? (ji-yo?) is used when one expects to hear confirmation of what one has said. The English equivalent is “is it right?” or “... isn’t it?” In spoken Korean, ~지요? (ji-yo?) is often shortened to ~조? (jyo?). This is in contrast to the general ending of yes/no questions, ~아/어요? (a/eo-yo), in which the speaker has no apparent assumption about the answer.

(6) ~한테 (han-te) and ~한테서 (han-te-seo) ‘to’ and ‘from’

The particle ~한테 (han-te) is used when the speaker wishes to indicate an arrival point for a movement, the range of the verb it is directed toward, or the cause of an action. When the recipient
Reference Further Study

(I) Telephone Expressions

[person] 좀 바꿔주세요.
[person] 존 박개 줄세요.
May I speak to [person]?

[person] 한데 전화해세요.
[person] 한테 잔해 해세요.
Please call [person].

이따가 다시 전화할게요.
i-tta-ga da-si jeon-hwa-hal-kke-yo.
I will call later.

잠깐만 기다리세요.
Just a minute, please.

전화 받으세요.
jeon-hwa bad-eu-se-yo.
Please answer the phone.

전화해 주세요.
jeon-hwa-hae ju-se-yo.
Please give me a call.

통화 중이에요.
tong-hwa-jung-i-e-yo.
The line is busy.
Do you have a fax machine?

What is the area code?

I would like to make a collect call.

(2) Extended Family terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Term</th>
<th>Korean Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law</td>
<td>자이바니 (or 시이바니) 시아비니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(female speaker)</td>
<td>시아비니 (or 시아비니) 시아비니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
<td>시어머니 (or 시어머니) 시어머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(female speaker)</td>
<td>시어머니 (or 시어머니) 시어머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(male speaker)</td>
<td>(남자) 조카 (남자) 조카</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(female speaker)</td>
<td>(여자) 조카 (여자) 조카</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daughter-in-law</td>
<td>미느리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son-in-law</td>
<td>사위</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>granddaughter</td>
<td>손녀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandson</td>
<td>손녀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephews</td>
<td>손녀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nieces</td>
<td>손녀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (father’s older brother)</td>
<td>큰아버지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aunt (큰아버지’s wife)</td>
<td>큰아버지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (father’s younger brother)</td>
<td>작은아버지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aunt ( 작은아버지’s wife)</td>
<td>작은아버지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (general term for a father’s brother)</td>
<td>사촌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aunt (father’s sister)</td>
<td>외사촌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (mother’s brother)</td>
<td>사촌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aunt (mother’s sister)</td>
<td>외사촌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (father’s husband)</td>
<td>사촌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aunt (mother’s husband)</td>
<td>외사촌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin (on the father’s side)</td>
<td>사촌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin (on the mother’s side)</td>
<td>사촌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephew</td>
<td>손녀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niece</td>
<td>손녀</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cultural Note

Telephone cards are the most common means of paying with public telephones. They are available at most convenience stores. Some public telephones accept credit cards, but only a few accept coins. If one wishes to make an international call, one must enter the prefix 001, 002, 007, or 008, followed by the appropriate country prefix, and then the telephone number. When making a long-distance call, the number must be preceded the area code (see below). Apart from that, follow the same instructions as with regular telephones. Numbers can be looked up by using the telephone book or by dialing 114 for directory service. Telephone books can be usually be found under the telephone in the telephone booth.

In cases of emergency, the numbers 112 (the police department) or 119 (the fire department) can be dialed toll-free from any phone. These numbers are to an operator at an emergency service center. When speaking to the operator, one states one’s name and location, what the problem is, and ask for appropriate assistance.

Internet cafes or computer access places are commonly found in most cities. Internet cafes are one of the most common hangouts for younger people. Some public libraries or post offices also offer Internet access. Most home have Internet access as well. ADSL and cable services are very common, and telephone line service is rare these days.

Terms of Address

Although people regularly use 저(jeo) and 나 (na) when referring to themselves, it is less common for people to address others using such personal pronouns. Instead, it is common to use kinship terms even when people are not actually related. A speaker will use the terms 형 (hyeong)/오빠 (o_ppa) “older brother” and 누나 (nu-na)/언니 (eun-ni) “older sister” to address someone who is somewhat older. The terms 아저씨 (a-joe-ssi) “uncle” and 아줌마 (a-jum-ma) “aunt” are used to address someone who is a generation apart in age. When addressing an elderly person, one will use the terms 할아버지 (hal-a-beo-ji) “grandfather” and 할머니 (hal-me-o-ni) “grandmother”. When speaking to someone who is the same age or younger, one says the person’s first name, followed by either -아 (a) or -아 (ya). The ending -아 (a) is used if the name ends with a consonant, as with 현준아 (Hyeon-jun-a). The ending -아 (ya) is used if the name ends in a vowel, as with 정호아 (Jeong-ho-ya).
Lesson 5: Making a Telephone Call

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) How are you, [your name]? Are you doing well?

(2) How was your day, [your name]? Are you feeling happy?

(3) How are your friends, [your friend's name]? Are they doing well?

(4) How are you, [your friend's name]? Are you doing something interesting?

(5) [your friend's name] said something. Are you feeling surprised?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) I would like to make a collect call.

(2) I am sorry. I must have dialed the wrong number.

(3) Please leave a message in the answering machine.

(4) It's ringing, but no one answers the phone.

(5) Maybe the phone is out of order.

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) I would like to make a collect call.

(2) I am sorry. I must have dialed the wrong number.

(3) Please leave a message in the answering machine.

(4) It's ringing, but no one answers the phone.

(5) Maybe the phone is out of order.

4. Please write a set of telephone dialogues.
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities


한국이란 한국에 왔는데 날씨가 너무 덥고 고통해서 밖에 나가기가 싫네요.

163

Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

오래간만에 한국에 왔는데 날씨가 너무 덥고 고통해서 밖에 나가기가 싫네요.

오래간만에 한국에 왔는데 날씨가 너무 덥고 고통해서 밖에 나가기가 싫네요.

오래간만에 한국에 왔는데 날씨가 너무 덥고 고통해서 밖에 나가기가 싫네요.

오래간만에 한국에 왔는데 날씨가 너무 덥고 고통해서 밖에 나가기가 싫네요.
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

요즘 방학이라서 휴가가 즐겁게 일어나가네요.
yo-jeum bang-hag-i-ra-seo hye-geun-i-ga jom neut-ge
il-eo-na-geo-deun-yo.
Since it's vacation, Hye-Geun gets up a little later these days.

샌디에는 보통 날씨가 어떻게? 
Saen-di-e-i-go nal-ssi-neun hang-sang bi-seu-tae?
How is the weather in San Diego in general?

샌디에이고 날씨는 항상 비슷해.
San Diego weather is always the same.

여름에도 별로 안 덥고 겨울에도 별로 안 추워.
yeo-reum-e-do byeo-lo an deop-go gyeo-ul-e-do byeo-lo an
chu-wo.
It’s not too hot in the summer, and not too cold in the winter.

한국 봄 가을은 비슷한 것 같아.
It seems to be similar to the spring and fall weather in Korea.

보통 겨울에 비가 좀 오지.
bo-tong gyeo-ul-e myeo-chil bi-ga jom o-ji.
Usually it rains for a few days in the winter.

겨울에 비가 와요? 눈이 아니고요?
gyeo-ul-e bi-ga wa-yo? nun-i a-ni-go-yo?
It rains in winter? It doesn’t snow?

우리 동네는 바다 쪽이라서 눈이 안 와.
u-ri dong-ne-neun ba-da jhag-i-ra-seo nun-i an wa.
My town is by the ocean so it doesn’t snow.
If you drive for about an hour towards the mountains, it snows.

I cannot imagine it.

It's the same in San Diego, but it rains on one side and snows on the other?

Is that weird?

The mountains are usually colder than other places, you know.

Ah, that's right.

 대화 Model Conversations

(1)

이정호: 할머니, 요즘은 날씨가 정말 많이 달네요. 매일 30도 를 넘는데요.

할머니: 요즘은 여름이 정말 더워지는 것 같아. 내가 어렸을 때는 이렇게 안 더했는데.

이정호: 한국뿐만 아니라 요즘은 전 세계적으로 이상기온 현상이 나타나잖아요.

할머니: 한국뿐만 아니라 요즘은 전 세계적으로 이상기온 현상이 나타나잖아요.

이정호: 어휴, 오래간만에 한국에 왔는데 날씨가 너무 덥고 뜨겁해서 밖에 나가기가 싫네요.

할머니: 이렇게 더운 날에는 집에서 에어컨이 뜨고 시원한 수박이나 맥는 게 최고지.

대화 Model Conversations

(1)

이정호: 할머니, 요즘은 날씨가 정말 많이 달네요. 매일 30도 를 넘는데요.

할머니: 요즘은 여름이 정말 더워지는 것 같아. 내가 어렸을 때는 이렇게 안 더했는데.

이정호: 한국뿐만 아니라 요즘은 전 세계적으로 이상기온 현상이 나타나잖아요.

할머니: 한국뿐만 아니라 요즘은 전 세계적으로 이상기온 현상이 나타나잖아요.

이정호: 어휴, 오래간만에 한국에 왔는데 날씨가 너무 덥고 뜨겁해서 밖에 나가기가 싫네요.

할머니: 이렇게 더운 날에는 집에서 에어컨이 뜨고 시원한 수박이나 맥는 게 최고지.
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

이어근: 놀이도 10시까지는 걸계요. 요즘 방학이라서 해근 이가 좀 놓게 일어나거든요.
neuj-eo-do yeol-ssi-kka-ji-neun gal-kke-yo. yo-jeum bang-hag-i-ra-seo hye-geun-i-ga jom neuj-ge
il-eo-na-geo-deun-yo.

이대로: 날씨가傳統, 날씨가 어때요?
o-ppa, saen-di-e-i-go-neun bo-tong nal-ssi-ga eo-ttae-yo?

이정호: 날씨는 항상 비슷해요. 여름에도 뜨겁고 가을
계절에도 별로 안 추워요.
saen-di-e-i-go nal-ssi-neun hang-sang bi-seu-tae,
yeo-reum-e-do byequol-lo an deop-go gyeol-ul-e-do
byeol-lo an chu-wo.

이해주: 겨울에 비가 왜요? 눈이 아니고요?
gyeol-ul-e bi-ga wa-yo? nun-i a-ni-go-yo?

이정호: 눈이 빗가 바다에 떨어지는 비이며요, 산
쪽으로 한참 추워요. 날씨가 고요한 날씨에요.
u-ri dong-ne-neun ba-da jjog-i-ra-seo nun-i an wa.
san-jjog-eu-ro han han-si-gan jeong-do un-jeonhae-seo
gi-myeon nun-i o-ji.

이해주: 눈이, 눈이 떨어져, 눈이 떨어지는 바다에요.
wa, sang-sang-i jal an doe-neun-deyo. gat-eun
saen-di-e-i-go-in-de han jjog-e-neun bi-ga o-go
han-jjog-e-neun nun-i wa-yo?

이정호: 그게 이상하니? 산은 보통 다른 데보다 더
주로요.
geu-ge i-sang-ha-ni? San-eun bo-tong da-reun de-bo-da
deo chup-jan-a.

이해주: 맞아, 그럴구나.
maj-a, geu-ree-ko-na.
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

Hye-Geun: Jeong-Ho, how is the weather in San Diego?
 Jeong-Ho: San Diego weather is always the same. It’s not too hot in the summer and not too cold in the winter. The weather is similar to the spring and fall weather in Korea. Usually it rains for a few days in the winter.

Hye-Geun: It rains in the winter? It doesn’t snow?
 Jeong-Ho: My town is by the ocean so it doesn’t snow. If you drive for about an hour towards the mountains, it snows.

Hye-Geun: Wow, I cannot imagine. It’s the same city, but it rains on one side and snows on the other?
 Jeong-Ho: Is that weird? The mountains are usually colder than other places, you know.
 Hye-Geun: Ah, that’s right.
어휘 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

가을 ga-eul
겨울 gyeo-ul
가을 geun-cheo
날씨 nal-ssi
내일 nae-il
눈 nun
다른 대 da-reun de
대꺼야 dae-geun-a
학 deo-un
동네 dong-ne
동생 dong-saeng
여 вла myeo-chil
바다쪽 ba-da jok
박 bak
밤 barn
방학 bang-hak
봄 bom
비 bi
사촌동생 sa-chon-dong-saeng
산 san
산쪽 san jok
샌디에이고 saen-di-e-i-go
수박 su-bak
수영장 su-yeong-jang
습도 seup-do
성내수영장 sil-lae su-yeong-jang
아침 a-chim

fall, autumn
winter
near, nearby
weather, climate
day
tomorrow
snow
other places
Hey, Dae-Geun
house (hon.)
hot day
village, town
younger sibling
several days
sea side
outside
night
(school) vacation
spring
rain
cousin
mountain
mountain side
San Diego
watermelon
swimming pool
humidity
indoor swimming pool
morning

Verbs

가다 ga-da
gat-da
곤곤하다 kkeun-kkeun-ha-da
나가다 na-ga-da
나타나다 na-ta-na-da
남다 neom-tta
люд다 nop-da
눈이 오다 nun-i o-da
to go
to be the same
to be humid, to be sticky
to go out
to appear
to go over
to be high
to snow

Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

어했을 때 eo-reoss-eul ttae
에어컨 e-eo-keon
여름 yeo-reum
오후 o-hu
여름 yo-jeum
우리 u-ri
이상기온 현상 i-sang-gi-on
해온 sang
일기예보 il-gi-ye-yo
침 jip
천 보 영화 cheop-bo-yeong-hwa
한 시간 han-si-gan
한쪽 han jok
한국 han-guk
할머니 hal-meo-ni
할머니 막 hal-meo-ni daek
형 hyeong
해근이 hye-geun-1
30도 sam-sip-do

when (someone was)
young
air conditioner
summer
afternoon
these days
we, us
abnormal temperature
effect
weather forecast
house
secret agent movie,
spy movie
one hour
one side
Korea
grandmother
grandmother’s house
(hon.)
(man’s) older brother
Hye-Geun
30 degrees Celsius/
Centigrade (30°C)
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

**Adverbs / Conjunctions**

- 그래도 geu-rae-do: even it is true
- 그러면 geu-reo-ja: let's do that
- 그럼 geu-reom: then
- 그렇구나 geu-reo-ku-na: that's right
- 너무 neo-mu: too, too much
- 늦게 nut-ge: late
- 늦어도 nuj-eo-do: at latest

**TARGET VOCABULARY**

- 다 왔다 deo-wo-ji-da: to become hot
- 떠다 deop-da: to be hot
- 맞다 mat-da: to be correct
- 먹다 meok-da: to eat
- 모두 mot bo-da: to not see
- 비가 오다 bi-ga o-da: to rain
- 비슷하다 bi-seu-ta-da: to be similar
- 상관없다 sang-gwan-eop-da: to be all right, to not matter

- 상상이 안 된다 sân-sang-i an-doe-da: to be beyond imagination, cannot imagine
- 새로 나오다 sae-ro na-o-da: to be newly released
- 시간(이) 있다 si-gan(-i) it-da: to have some time
- 시원하다 si-won-ha-da: to be cool
- 영화 보다 yeong-hwa bo-da: to watch a movie
- 오다 o-da: to come
- 운전하다 un-jeon-ha-da: to drive
- 이상하다 i-sang-ha-da: to be strange
- 일어나다 il-eo-na-da: to wake up
- 재미있다 jae-mi-it-da: to be fun
- 점심 약간 jeom-sim meok-da: to eat lunch
- 저녁의 기대 jae-mi-it-da: to spend time, to live
- 출다 chup-da: to turn on
- 들어 놓다 teul-eo no-ta: to become hot
- 다 같이 da ga-chi: all together
- 더 deo: more
- 많이 man-i: a lot
- 매일 mae-il: every day
- 빨리 byeol-lo: not particularly
- 보통 bo-tong: in general
- 사실은 sa-sil-eun: in fact
- 아주 a-ju: very, very much
- 어휴 eo-hu: alas
- 오래간만에 o-rae-gan-man-e: after a long time
- 레이지 i-reo-ke: wow
- 일찍 il-jjik: like this
- 전 세계적으로 jeon se-gyeo-jeog-eu-ro: early
- 점점 jeom-jeom: world-widely
- 점점 jeong-mal: gradually
- 좀 jom: really
- 한 ... 정도 han ... jeong-do: a little, a few
- 항상 hang-sang: approximately, about
- 10시까지 yeol-si-kka-ji: always
- 9시까지 a-hop-si-kka-ji: by 10:00
- 8시까지 yeol-si-kka-ji: by 9:00

**Adverbs / Conjunctions**

- 이쁘다 i-pp-pa: early
- 일찍 il-jjik: early
- 점점 jeom-jeom: gradually
- 점점 jeong-mal: really
- 좀 jom: a little, a few
- 항상 hang-sang: approximately, about
- 10시까지 yeol-si-kka-ji: always
- 9시까지 a-hop-si-kka-ji: by 10:00
- 8시까지 yeol-si-kka-ji: by 9:00
문법 Grammar

(I) The Intimate Speech Style and the Plain Speech Style

The intimate speech style is used between people who share a close relationship, such as spouses, siblings, and childhood friends. Intimate speech uses the pattern Verb + ~01/01 (a/eo) where

~01 (a) is attached if the final vowel of the verb stem is either 01 (a) or 01 (o)

- 많다 (man-ta) “to be many”
  → 많 (man) + ~01 (a)
  → 많아 (man-a)

~01 (a) is omitted if the verb stem ends with the vowel 01 (a) or 01 (ae) without a final consonant

- 지다 (ja-da) “to sleep”
  → 지 (ja) + ~01 (a)
  → 지 (ja)

~01 (a) is attached for all other verb stems

- 먹다 (meok-da) “to eat”
  → 먹 (meok) + ~01 (eo)
  → 먹이 (meog-eo)

~01 (eo) is attached to the any past tense marker ~았/었 (at/eot)

~01 (ya) is attached after the copula 01 (i), as in 나는 (na-ya) “(it’s) me,” or 갈 거야 (gal kkeo-ya) “(I) will go”

There are also special cases when contraction and/or omission occurs:

- With the predicate ~히다 (ha-da), the stem 하 (ha) + ~01 (a) contracts to 해 (hae)
  전화하다 (jeon-hwa-ha-da) “to make a telephone call”
  전화해 (jeon-hwa-hae)

- With verb stems that end in 오, there is a contraction to 와 (wa)
  오다 (o-da) “to come”
  와 (wa)

- With verb stems that end in 우, there is a contraction to 줄 (jul)
  주다 (ju-da) “to give”
  줄 (jul) + ~01 (eo)
  줄 (jul)

- With irregular verbs that end in -다, the ~ is omitted and vowel contracts to ~워
  돼다 (deop-da) “to be hot”
  돼 (deop) + ~01 (eo)
  돼 (deop) + 우 (u) + ~01 (eo)
  돼 (deo-wo)

The one exception is 돼다 (dop-da) “to help,” which has a 와 (wa) contraction.

With other endings, one speaks in the intimate style form by omitting the marker ~요 (yo) from the polite style form.
The plain speech style is used extensively in published writing, including newspapers, magazines, and academic journals. It can be used in conjunction with the intimate style, especially when speaking to a child, a younger sibling, or a childhood friend. Different sentence endings are used according to the type of sentence:

- With a statement, use ~다 (da).
- With a question, use ~니? (ni?) or ~나? (na?).
- With a request, use ~어라 (a/ra).
- With a suggestion, use ~자 (ja) as in 가다 (ga-da), 가나? (ga-ni?), 가라 (ga-ra), and 가자 (ga-ja).

(2) ~어다 (a/ra de-da) “become”

The descriptive verb pattern verb stem + ~어다 expresses a change from one state (or condition) to another. Since it denotes a state of becoming or happening, it changes a descriptive verb into an active verb. Descriptive verbs using the construction ~어다 do not denote the resulting state or condition, as in 없어도 (nae-deo) “nothing” (yeo-reum-e-neun nal-ssi-deo-tho-deo-yo) “In summer, the weather becomes hotter.” If a present state is a result of a change in the past, the past tense form is used, as in 방이 더워졌어요. (bang-i deo-reo-wo-jyeo-jyeo-yo) “The room has become dirty.”

(3) ~가아요 (ja-a-yo) “... you know”

When the speaker assumes that the listener will agree with him/her, or wants to reconfirm facts, the speaker will use the pattern ~가아요 at the end of the verb stem. Although this pattern is derived from the negative question ~지 않아요?, there is no negative connotation. As it is not a question, there is no rising intonation.

(4) ~기로하다 (gi-ro ha-da) “plan to, decide to”

One uses the pattern ~기로하다 (gi-ro ha-da) to express or determination or a decision. This pattern expresses more resolve than other patterns that convey a decidedness to do something. One uses ~기로하다 (gi-ro haess-eo-yo) to express the increased degree of resolve. With statements, one always uses the past tense marker ~기로 해요 (gi-ro haess-eo-yo). The present tense form, ~기로 해요 (gi-ro hae-yo), always indicates a suggestion or recommendation.

여름 휴가 동안에 한국에 가기로 했어요. (yeo-reum hu-ga-dong-an han-gug-e ga-gi-ro haess-eo-yo.)
I decided to go to Korea during summer vacation.

여름 휴가 동안에 한국에 가기로 해요. (yeo-reum hu-ga-dong-an han-gug-e ga-gi-ro hae-yo.)
Let’s go to Korea during summer vacation.

(5) ~보다 (bo-da (deo/deol)) “more/less than~”

Use the pattern noun 1 + ~보다 + noun 2 with the optional adverb 더 (deol) “more,” or 덜 (deol) “less” when comparing two or more items. The first item of comparison is attached to ~보다. The following item comes directly after it. Although the order of items can be changed, it is important to note that the second item should be
used to describe the comparison. When necessary, use the pattern~종에서 to convey the expression *between* or *among*. To express a superlative construction (*the most*), use 제일 or 가장. In written Korean, 가장 is preferred.

미국이 한국보다 더 크요.
(mi-gug-i han-guk-bo-da deo keo-yo)
America is bigger than Korea.

유미가 유진이보다 덜 예뻐요.
(yu-mi-gä yu-jin-i-bo-da deol ye-ppeo-yo)
Yumi is less pretty than Yujin.

(6) ~(으)나 (으)-나 “or something”

Use the pattern ~(으)나 to make a mild suggestion. When this pattern is used, there is no implication that the suggestion given is the best or only one, and the item suggested is not absolute or fixed. Rather, it is one of many possible alternatives. In this instance, ~(으)나 means “just” or “or something.”

커피나 한잔 할까요?
keo-pi-na han-jan hal-kka-yo?
Shall we have a cup of coffee or something together?

(7) Adverb Formation

To express the way that something has occurred, attach ~게(ge) to an descriptive verb stem to form an adverb. The adverbial form ~게(ge) refers to the manner or way in which something happens.

재미있다 to be interesting 재미있게 interestingly
jae-mi-it-da jae-mi-it-ge

Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities
참고학습 Further Study

(1) 날씨와 계절에 관한 표현들

봄 bom  
여름 yeo-reum  
가을 ga-eul  
겨울 geo-wul  

일기예보 il-gi-ye-bo  
온도 on-do  
영상 yeong-sang  
영하 yeong-ha  
섭씨 seop-ssi  
화씨 hwa-ssi

기온이 낮다 gi-on-i nat-da  
기온이 높다 gi-on-i nop-da  
날씨가 나쁘다 nal-ssi-ga na-ppeu-da  
날씨가 좋다 nal-ssi-ga jo-ta

비간하다 kkeun-kkeun-ha-da  
구름이 까다 gu-reum-i kki-da  
눈이 오다 nun-i o-da  
비가 오다 bi-ga o-da  
바람이 불다 ba-ram-i bul-da  
얼음이 열다 eol-eum-i eol-da

덥다 deop-da  
따뜻하다 tta-teu-da  
시험하다 si-won-ha-da  
쌀쌀하다 ssal-ssal-ha-da  
춥다 chup-da

spring  
summer  
fall  
winter

weather forecast  
temperature  
above zero  
below zero  
Celsius  
Fahrenheit

the temperature is low  
the temperature is high  
the weather is bad  
the weather is good

to be muggy  
to get cloudy  
to snow  
to rain  
the wind blows  
the ice freezes

to get hot  
to become clean  
to get cold  
to get cloudy

(2) 여가활동에 관한 표현들

Sports

권투를 하다 gwon-tu-reul ha-da  
레슬링을 하다 re-seul-ling-eul ha-da  
산책을 하다 san-chaeg-eul ha-da  
수영을 하다 su-yeong-eul ha-da  
조깅을 하다 jo-ging-eul ha-da

농구를 하다 nong-gu-reul ha-da  
미식축구를 하다 mi-sik-chuk-gu-reul ha-da  
배구를 하다 bae-gu-reul ha-da  
야구를 하다 ya-gu-reul ha-da  
축구를 하다 chuk-gu-reul ha-da

등산을 하다/가다 deung-san-eul ha-da/ga-da  
여행을 하다/가다 yeo-haeng-eul ha-da/ga-da

스케이트를 타다 seu-ke-i-teu-reul ta-da  
스키를 타다 seu-ki-reul ta-da  
자전거를 타다 ja-jeon-geo-reul ta-da

to box  
to wrestle  
to go for a walk  
to swim  
to jog  
to play basketball  
to play football  
to play volleyball  
to play baseball  
to play soccer  
to climb a mountain  
to travel  
to skate  
to ski  
to ride a bicycle
Lesson 6: Weather and Leisure Activities

### Musical instruments

- **To play the flute:** 
  - 플룻을 불다: peul-lus-eul bul-da
- **To play the clarinet:**
  - 클라리넷을 불다: keul-ri-net-eul bul-da
- **To play the trumpet:**
  - 튜브를 불다: teu-reom-pes-eul bul-da
- **To play the guitar:**
  - 기타를 치다: gi-ta-reul chi-da
- **To play the piano:**
  - 피아노를 치다: pi-a-no-reul chi-da
- **To play the drums:**
  - 드럼을 치다: deu-reom-eul chi-da
- **To play the flute:**
  - 첼로를 치다: cheol-lo-reul kyeo-da
- **To play the violin:**
  - 바이올린을 치다: va-i-ol-in-eul kyeo-da
- **To play the cello:**
  - 비올라를 치다: vi-o-la-reul kyeo-da

### Etc.

- **To go fishing:**
  - 낚시를 가다/하다: nak-si-reul ga-da/ha-da
- **To go to see a play:**
  - 연극 구경을 가다/하다: yeon-geuk gu-geong-eul ga-da/ha-da
- **To go to see a movie:**
  - 영화 구경을 가다/하다: yeong-hwa gu-geong-eul ga-da/ha-da
- **To play a card game:**
  - 카드놀이를 하다: ka-deu no-li-reul ha-da
- **To play a computer game:**
  - 컴퓨터 게임을 하다: keom-pyu-teo ge-im-eul ha-da
- **To go to a karaoke room:**
  - 노래방에 가다: no-rae-bang-e ga-da
- **To go to an art gallery:**
  - 미술관에 가다: mi-sul-gwan-e ga-da
- **To go to a museum:**
  - 박물관에 가다: bang-mul-gwan-e ga-da
- **To go to a concert:**
  - 음악회에 가다: eum-a-koe-e ga-da
Cultural Note

Korea is located in the East Asian monsoon belt and has four distinct seasons. Due to its location, Korea has monsoon season in the summer. A storm with abundant rainfall and strong, gusting winds, called a typhoon, is an unwelcome annual visitor. About 70% of rainfall comes between June and August. The hottest month is August, and the coldest month is January. The average temperature in August is above 25°C (about 77°F). In January, it is below -4°C (approximately 30°F).

Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

   (1)  han-gug-eun yeo-reum-e bo-tong nal-ssi-ga eo-ttae-yo?

   (2) nae-il ga-chi jeom-sim-meoek-go yeong-hwa bo-reo ga-sil-lae-yo?

   (3) eo-teo seu-po-cheu-reul jo-a-ha-se-yo?

   (4) ju-mal-e-neun bo-tong mwo ha-se-yo?

   (5) i-beon hyu-ga-ttong-an mwo ha-syeoss-eo-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English:

   (1) yo-jeum-eun jeon se-ge-jeog-eu-ro i-sang-gi-on hyeon-sang-i na-ta-naj a-yo.


   (5) sae-ro na-on cheop-bo-yeong-hwa-in-de a-ju jae-mi-it-dae-yo.
3. Please translate into Korean:

(1) I like to watch TV during the weekend, but this weekend was too busy.
(2) My hobby is taking pictures, and my brother’s is playing a piano.
(3) In Korea, the weather during winter is very cold and windy.
(4) When I have time, I love to visit a museum or an art gallery.
(5) We will have a lot of rain in San Diego tomorrow.

4. Please write a paragraph describing the weather in your town.

Lesson 7: Shopping
 Efexxere Patterns

어서 오세요. 뭐 찾으세요?
eo-seo- o-se-yo. mwo chaj-eu-se-yo?
Welcome. (lit. Come quickly). What are you looking for?

바지 한벌 사려고 하는데 구경 좀 해도 돼요?
baji han beol sa-ryeo-go ha-neun-de gu-gyeong jom hae-do
dwae-yo?
I am trying to buy a pair of pants. Is it OK if I look around?

이러 들어오세요.
iri deul-o-o-se-yo.
Come on in here, please.

어떤 색깔 바지를 찾으시는데요?
co-tecon saek-kkal ba-ji-reul chaj-eu-si-neun-de-yo?
What color of pants are you looking for?

그냥 아무 몫이나 잘 어울리는 무난한 색깔이면 좋겠는데요.
geu-nyang a-mu os-e-na jal eo-ul-li-neun mu-nan-han
saek-kkal-i-myeon jo-kken-neun-de-yo.
A plain color—one that fits well with any clothes—would be good.

그럼 짙은 정색이나 연한 갈색이 좋겠네요.
geu-reom j-eun cheong-saeg-i-na yeon-han gal-saeg-i
jo-kken-ne-yo.
Then either navy blue or light brown would be good.

장난만이. 제가 좀 찾아 들게요.
jam-kkan-man-yo. je-ga jom chaj-a bo-kke-yo.
Just a moment, please. I will check and find some.
제를 따라 오세요. 제가 보여드릴게요.
jeo-reul tta-ra o-se-yo. je-ga mo-syeo-da deu-ril-kke-yo.
Please follow me. I will take you there.

어때세요? 제가 보여드릴 맞는 것 같아요.
eo-tteo-se-yo? je-ga bo-gi-en jal man-neun geot gat-eun-de-yo.
How is it? To me, it looks good on you.

잘 맞네요.
jal man-ne-yo.
It fits well.

그런데 이게 드라이 해야 되는 거 아님가요?
geu-reon-de i-geo deu-ra-i hae-ya doe-neun geo a-nin-ga-yo?
But doesn’t this need to be dry-cleaned?

요즘엔 정장 바지도 드라이 안 해도 되는 게 많이 나와요.
yo-jeum-en jeong-jang-ba-ji-do deu-ra-i an hae-do doe-neun ge
man-i na-wa-yo.
A lot of dress pants that come out these days don’t need to be
dry-cleaned.

그냥 세탁기에 넣고 돌려서도 됩니다.
You can just put it in a washer and run.

잘 타있어서 일반도 안 해셔도 되고요.
If you shake it well and line-dry, you don’t have to iron it.

잘 편리해서 마음에 드네요.
cham pyeol-li-hae-seo ma-eum-e deu-ne-yo.
I like it because it is convenient (to handle).

가격은 얼마나 하는데요?
gae-gyeog-eun eol-ma-na ha-neun-de-yo?
How much is the price?

점가는 10만원인데요 세일기간이라서 25프로 세일해 드리고 있어요.
jeong-kka-neun sim-man-won-in-de yo-jeum sse-il-gi-gan-i-ri-seo
i-sib-o-pue-ro sse-il-hae deul-ri-go iss-eo-yo.
The regular price is 100,000 won, but there’s a sale, so we take
off 25%.

그럼 이거 두벌 다 주세요.
geu-reom i-geo du-beol da ju-se-yo.
Then please give me both of them.

카드도 받으시죠?
Ka-deu-do bad-eu-si-jyo?
You accept credit cards, right?

그럼요. 이쪽으로 오세요.
geu-reom-yo. i-jjog-eu-ro o-se-yo.
Sure. Come this way.

넥타이하고 와이셔츠도 좀 봤으면 좋겠는데요.
nek-ta-i-ha-go wa-i-syeo-cheu-do jom bwass-eu-myeon
jo-ken-neun-de-yo.
I would like to see some ties and dress shirts, too.

손님이 일으실 거예요, 아니면 누구한테 선물하실 거에요?
son-nim-i ib-eu-sil kkeo-ye-yo, a-ni-myeon nu-gu-han-te seon-mul-
ha-sil kkeo-ye-yo?
Is it for yourself to wear or a gift for someone else?
할아버지 드릴 건데요.
hal-a-beo-ji deu-ri kkeon-de-yo.
It's for my grandpa.

점잔은 결로 몇 가지 좀 보여 주세요.
jeom-jan-eun geol-lo myeot ga-ji jom bo-yeo ju-se-yo.
Please show me some of the ones in plain colors.

요즘엔 나이드신 분들이 점잔은 색깔을 더 싶어하셔요.
yo-jeum-en na-i-deu-sin bun-deul-i jeom-jan-eun saek-kkal-eul deo
sil-eo-ha-se-yo.
These days, elderly people like plain colors less than young
people do.

요즘엔 노인용으로도 이렇게 산뜻하고 밝은 색상들이 많이 나
와요.
yo-jeum-en no-in-yong-eu-ro-do i-reo-ke san-teu-ta-go baig-eun
saek-sang-deul-i man-i na-wa-yo.
Many vivid and brightly colored items, like this, for elderly people
these days.

이것 보세요.
i-geot bo-se-yo.
Look at this.

이 거지는색 왜서초하고 줄무늬 벡타이가 잘 어울릴 것
같네요.
i gyeo-ja-saek wa-i-syeo-cheu-ha-go jul-mu-ni nek-ta-i-ga jal
eo-ul-lil- kkeot gat-eun-de-yo.
I think this dark yellow dress shirt and striped tie would go well
together.

제가 보기엔 견질은 것 같은데요.
Je-ga bo-gi-en gwaen-chan-eun geot gat-eun-de-yo.
To me, it looks good.
대화 Model Conversations

(1)

점원: 어서 오세요, 손님. 위 찾아세요?

이정호: 바지 한 벌 사려고 하는데 구경 좀 해도 돼요?

점원: 그럼. 이리 들어오세요. 어떤 색깔 바지를 찾으시는 데요?

이정호: 그래요. 이리 들어오세요. 어떤 색깔 바지를 찾으시는 데요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 샀는데 어떤 색깔이면 좋겠나요?

이정호: 그렇게 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

점원: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?

이정호: 그럼. 이런 걸 사주실래요?
입력: 그려요. 이쪽으로 오세요.
geu-reom-yo. i-jjog-eu-ro o-se-yo.

(3)
이정호: 아침, 밥타이하고 와이셔츠도 쓰고면 출근하는데요.
a-cham, nek-ta-i-ha-go wa-i-syeeo-cheu-do jom
bwass-eu-myeon jo-kken-neum-de-yeo.

입력: 그려세요? 손님이 입장하실 거예요, 아니면 누구한테 선물하실 거예요?
geu-reo-se-yeo? son-nim-i ib-eu-sil kkeeo-ye-yeo,
a-ni-myeon nu-gu-hane seon-mul-ha-sil kkeeo-ye-yeo?

이정호: 할아버지 드릴 건데요. 좀 정갈은 걸로 몇 가지 좀 보여 주세요.
hal-a-beo-ji deu-ril kkeon-de-yeo. jom jeom-jan-eun
geol-lo myeot ga-ji jom bo-yee ju-se-yeo.

입력: 여며, 요즘엔 나이드신 분들이 정갈은 색상으로 더 심어 하세요.
eo-meo, yo-jeum-en na-i-deu-sin bun-deul-i jeom-jan-eun
saek-kkal-eul deo sil-eo-ha-se-yeo.
요즘엔 노인용으로도 이렇게 색뜻하고 밝은 색상들이 많이 나와요.
yo-jeum-en no-in-yong-eu-ro-do i-reo-ke san-teu-ta-go
balg-eun saek-sang-deul-i man-i na-wa-yeo.
이것 보세요. 이 거자색 와이셔츠하고 줄무늬 백타이가 잘 어울릴 것 같습니다.
i-geot bo-se-yeo. i gyeo-ja-saek wa-i-syeeo-cheu-ha-go
jul-mu-ni nek-ta-i-ga jal eo-ul-lil keeot gat-eun-de-yeo.

이정호: 흐... 제가 보기엔 괜찮은 것 같습니다.
heum ... je-ga bo-gi-en gwaen-chan-eun geot
gat-eun-de-yeo.
그래도 혹시 할아버지가 마음에 안 들어 하시면 바꾸려 외도 되지요?
geu-rae-do hok-si hal-a-beo-ji-ga ma-eum-e an deul-eo
ha-si-myeeon ba-kku-reo wa-do doe-ji-yo?
Lesson 7: Shopping

영문번역  English Translation

(1)
Salesperson: Hello. May I help you?
Lee: I am trying to buy a pair of pants. Can I look around?
Salesperson: Sure. Come on in, please. What color of pants are you looking for?
Lee: A plain color one that goes well with any clothes would be great.
Salesperson: Then either navy blue or light brown would be good. One moment, please. I will check and find some. What's your waist size?
Lee: Either 32 or 33.
Salesperson: How about this? This design sells the most these days. I think it will look good on you, too.
Lee: It looks good. Can I try it on?
Salesperson: Of course. Can you see the dressing room over there? Please follow me; I will take you there.

(2)
Salesperson: How is it? I think it looks good on you.
Lee: Yes, it fits well. But doesn't this need to be dry-cleaned?
Salesperson: No, these days we get a lot of dress pants that don't need to be dry-cleaned. You can just put it in a washer. If you shake it well and line-dry, you don't have to iron it.
Lee: Really? I like that it is convenient. How much is it?
Salesperson: The regular price is 100,000 won, but there's a sale, so it will be 25% off.
Lee: Then I will get two pairs altogether. You accept credit cards, right?
Salesperson: Sure. Come on this way.

(3)
Salesperson: Really? Is it for yourself or a gift for someone else?
Lee: It's for my grandpa. Can you show me some of the plain color ones?
Salesperson: Oh no, actually elderly people like plain colors less than young people do these days. There are many vivid and bright color items, like this, for elderly people. Check this out. I think this dark yellow dress shirt and striped tie would match well.
Lee: Hmm... I think it will look alright. But if my grandpa doesn't like it, I can still exchange it, right?
Salesperson: Of course. If you come within 30 days, you can exchange it. Please be sure to bring your receipt.
어휘 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

가격 ga-gyeok  
값값 gal-saek  
가져 가자 gyeo-saek  
나이드 신분 na-i-deu-sin bun-deul  
복cai nek-ta-i  
노인용 no-in-yong  
누구 nu-gu  
두벌 du-bool  
드라이 deu-ra-i  
디자인 di-ja-in  
옷 myeot  
옷 가지 myeot ga-ji  
무 mwo  
바지 ba-ji  
사이즈 sa-i-jeu  
색깔 sakk-kkal  
색상 sakk-sang  
세일 기간 se-il-gi-gan  
세탁기 se-tak-gi  
손님 son-nim  
영수증 yeong-su-jeung  
옷 ot  
와이셔츠 wa-i-syeo-cheu  
이복 i-jok  
자복 jeo-jok  
점원 jeom-won  
점찰은 것 jeom-jan-eun geot  
정가 jeong-kka  
정장 바지 jeong-jang ba-ji  

price  
light brown  
dark yellow  
elderly people  
necktie  
things for elderly people  
who, someone  
two pairs  
dry cleaning  
things to give (hon.)  
design  
what  
a couple of, several  
what, something  
pants  
size  
color  
color and shape  
sale period  
washing machine  
customer  
receipt  
clothes  
dress shirt  
this side  
that side  
salesperson  
plain-color item  
original price  
dress pants  

Verbs

가지고 오다 ga-ji-go o-da  
객참다 gwaen-chan-ta  
객참아 보이다 gwaen-chan-a bo-i-da  
교환해 드리다 gyo-hwan-hae deu-ri-da  
구경하다 gu-gyeong-ha-da  
나오다 na-o-da  
날다 neo-ta  
다짐마다 da-rim-jil-ha-da  
들리다 dol-li-da  
드라이한다 deu-ra-i ha-da  
놀다 deul-eo-o-da  
따라온다 tta-ra-o-da  
마음에 듣다 ma-eum-e deul-da  
마음에 안 들어하다 ma-eum-e an deul-eo-ha-da  
말리다 mal-li-da  
마세요 드리다 mo-syeo-da deu-ri-da  
무난하다 mu-nan-ha-da  
바꾸려 오다 ba-kku-reo o-da  
받다 bat-da  
받다 balk-da  
보다 bo-da  

Naval blue  
credit card  
fitting room  
one pair  
grandfather  
10,000 won  
25 percent  
30 days
보여 주다 bo-yeo ju-da
보이다 bo-i-da
사다 sa-da
산뜻하다 san-tteu-ta-da
선풍하다 seon-mul-ha-da
세일해 드리다 se-il-hae deu-ri-da
telefone하다 sil-eo-ha-da
이울리다 eo-ul-li-da
연하다 yeon-ha-da
오다 o-da
일다 ip-da
입어 보다 ib-eo-bo-da
줄 맞다 jal mat-da
ificaciones jecom-jan-ta
좋다 jo-ta
주다 ju-da
주우니 jul-mu-ni
절다 jit-da
겹다 chat-da
착하다 chaj-a-bo-da
텔다 teol-da
필리다 pal-li-da
편리하다 pyeo-li-ha-da

to show

to be seen
to buy
to be neat and fresh
to give a present
to discount (hon.)
to dislike
to match well
to be light
to come
to wear
to try on (clothes), to wear

to fit well
to be decent
to be good
to give
stripe
to be dark
to look for, to find
to look for
to shake off
to be sold

to be convenient

| 아 닐 면 a-ni-myeon | 아니면 a-ni-myeon | or, if not ~ |
| 비어 a-mu | 아니면 a-mu | any |
| 애들 a-cham | 아니면 a-cham | oh, |
| 어떻게 조요? eo-tteo-se-yo | 어떻게 조요? eo-tteo-se-yo | How about ~ |
| 어떤 eo-tteon | 어떤 eo-tteon | which, a certain |
| 어떤 eo-meo | 어떤 eo-meo | uh-uh (no) |
| 어서 eo-seo | 어서 eo-seo | quickly, please |
| 언제든지 eon-je-deun-ji | 언제든지 eon-je-deun-ji | whenever |
| 얼마나 eol-ma-na | 얼마나 eol-ma-na | how much |
| 요즘 yo-jeum | 요즘 yo-jeum | these days |
| 이렇게 i-roo-ke | 이렇게 i-roo-ke | like this |
| 이리 i-ri | 이리 i-ri | this way |
| 잘 jal | 잘 Jal | well |
| 중간만 jam-kkan-man | 중간만 jam-kkan-man | for a minute |
| 제가 보기엔 je-ga bo-gi-en | 제가 보기엔 je-ga bo-gi-en | in my point of view |
| 제일 je-il | 제일 je-il | the most, the first |
| 줄 jom | 줄 jom | a little, please |
| 참 cham | 참 cham | oh, |
| 한번 han-bcon | 한번 han-bcon | once |
| 특시 hok-si | 특시 hok-si | just in case |
| .... heum | .... heum | hmmm . . . |

Adverbs / Pre-Nouns / Conjunctions

| 그냥 geu-nyang | just, only |
| 그래도 geu-ra-do | even it is true |
| 그래요? geu-reo-se-yo | really? |
| 그레도 geu-reon-de | but, by the way |
| 그럼 geu-reom | then |
| 그럼 geu-reom-yo | of course |
| 곧 kkok | for sure |
| 많이 man-i | a lot |
Grammar

(1) Passive Verbs

In English, one often hears such sentence structures as "the window was broken." This is the passive form. In Korean, the passive construction is formed by attaching the suffix "-i(i), -hi (hi), -li (li), or -gi (gi)" to a verb stem. Since all verbs cannot be made passive, the ones that can must be memorized along with the suffix used.

With passive verbs, the subject (which would be the object of a transitive sentence) is marked by the subject particles ơi(i) or 가(ga), or the topic markers 은(eun) or 는(neun). The agent (the subject of a transitive sentence) is marked with the dative particle 한테 (han-te) when the agent is a person or animal. If the agent is an inanimate object, the particle 였(e) is used. Below are some verbs classified according to passive suffix.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Sample Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>보다</td>
<td>보이다</td>
<td>저기 신호등이 보여요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo-da</td>
<td>bo-i-da</td>
<td>jëo-gi sin-ho-deung-i bo-yeo-yo I see the traffic light over there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to see</td>
<td>to be seen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰다</td>
<td>쓰이다</td>
<td>이 약이 감기에 잘 쓰어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sseu-da</td>
<td>sseu-i-da</td>
<td>i-yag-i gam-gi-e jal sseu-yeo-yo This medicine is often used for colds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to use</td>
<td>to be used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫다</td>
<td>닫히다</td>
<td>바람에 문이 닫혔어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat-da</td>
<td>da-chi-da</td>
<td>ba-ram-e mun-i da-chyeoss-eyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to close</td>
<td>to be closed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>막다</td>
<td>막히다</td>
<td>차가 많아서 갑자 막혀요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mak-da</td>
<td>ma-ki-da</td>
<td>cha-ga man-a-seo gi-l-i ma-kyeo-yo The street is blocked due to many cars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to block</td>
<td>to be blocked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡다</td>
<td>잡히다</td>
<td>도둑이 경찰관에게 잡혔어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jap-da</td>
<td>ja-pi-da</td>
<td>do-dug-i gyeong-chal-han-te ja-pyes-eyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to catch</td>
<td>to be caught</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물다</td>
<td>물리다</td>
<td>우체부가 개한테 물렸어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mul-da</td>
<td>mul-li-da</td>
<td>u-che-bu-ga gae-han-te mul-lyeoss-eyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to use</td>
<td>to be bitten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열다</td>
<td>열리다</td>
<td>가게문이 열렸어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeol-da</td>
<td>yeol-li-da</td>
<td>ga-ge-mun-i yeol-lyeoss-eyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to open</td>
<td>to be open</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>응다</td>
<td>응리다</td>
<td>음악 소리가 들려요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deul-da</td>
<td>deul-li-da</td>
<td>eum-ak so-ri-ga deul-lyeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hear</td>
<td>to be heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팔다</td>
<td>팔리다</td>
<td>요즘 집이 잘 팔려요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pal-da</td>
<td>pal-li-da</td>
<td>yo-jeum jib-i jal pal-lyeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sell</td>
<td>to be sold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벗다</td>
<td>벗기다</td>
<td>개한테 사과를 벗었어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppaet-da</td>
<td>ppaet-gi-da</td>
<td>gae-han-te sa-gwa-reul ppaet-gyeoss-eyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to take away</td>
<td>to be taken away</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫다</td>
<td>닫히다</td>
<td>My apple has been taken away by the dog.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When indicating the progression or repetition of an action, add the suffix ~고 있다 (go it-da) to the verb. The honorific form uses the suffix ~고 계시다 (go gye-si-da). The past tense plain uses the suffix ~고 있었어요 (go iss-ess-oo-yo), and the past tense honorific uses ~고 계셨어요 (go gye-ss-oo-yo).

The future tense uses ~고 있을 거예요 (go iss-eul kkeo-ye-yo) and ~고 계실 거예요 (go gye-sil kkeo-ye-yo), respectively.

(3) ~오면 ((eu)-myeon) “if, when~”

Use the suffix ~오면 (eu-myeon) to create either a conditional statement (in English, one that uses “if”), or to express when. When the verb stem ends in a consonant other than 음, use ~오면 (eu-myeon). When it ends in a vowel or 음, use ~면 (myeon).

(4) ~어요 ((eu)-l-kke-yo) vs. ~어요 ((eu)-l-lae-yo) and expressing intention

The ending ~어요 ((eu)-l-kke-yo) expresses the determination of or a promise by the speaker to do something. It denotes willingness, assurance, and promise. The English equivalent is “I am going to do.” It may be used only in the first person and only in the form of statement. It cannot be used in a question. When expressing intention in a statement, use the sentence ending ~요 (eu)-l-lae-yo. Also use it when asking the intention of the listener. It denotes intention and assertion. The English equivalent is “planning to do.” These patterns occur only in casual language. In a formal setting, one uses ~요 (eu)-si-get-ss-eun-ni-kka?) instead of ~요 and ~겠습니다 (get-ss-eun-ni-da) instead of ~요.

Examples:

저는 비빔밥을 먹을래요.
jeo-neun bi-bim-ppab-eul meok-eul-kke-yo.
I am going to eat bi-bim-ppap. (casual)

저는 비빔밥을 먹을게요.
jeo-neun bi-bim-ppab-eul meok-eul-lae-yo.
I am planning to eat bi-bim-ppap. (casual)

저는 비빔밥을 먹겠습니다.
I am planning to eat bi-bim-ppap. (formal)

비빔밥을 먹을래요?
bi-bim-ppab-eul meok-eul-lae-yo?
Are you planning to eat bi-bim-ppap? (casual)

비빔밥을 드시겠습니까?
bi-bim-ppab-eul deu-ss-get-ss-eun-ni-kka?
Are you planning to eat bi-bim-ppap? (formal)
(5) Noun Formation: ~는 것 (neun geot) vs. ~이/가 (gi)

To express a verb as a noun, add the suffix ~는 것 to the verb. This is the equivalent of adding the suffix -ing to a verb in English. Depending on the sentence, a particle may be added, causing contraction. In writing, the forms ~는 것이, ~는 것을, and ~는 것은 are not shortened into contractions. Contractions are used colloquially. The contractions occur like so:

~는 것이 (neun geot-i) → ~는 게 (neun ge)
~는 것을 (neun geot-eul) → ~는 걸 (neun geol)
~는 것은 (neun geot-eon) → ~는 건 (neun geon)

The ending ~기(-gi) is also used to form a noun from a verb. Sometimes ~는 것 and ~기 are used interchangeably, but not always. To make a list of things to do, ~기 is used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geot-da</td>
<td>walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no-rae-ha-da</td>
<td>singing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syo-ping-ga-da</td>
<td>go shopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ja-da</td>
<td>sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geot-gi</td>
<td>geon-neun geot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no-rae-ha-gi</td>
<td>no-rae-ha-neun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syo-ping-ga-gi</td>
<td>syo-ping-ga-neun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ja-gi</td>
<td>ja-neun geot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6) Permission ~아/어도 되다 (a/eo-do doe-da) vs. Prohibition ~아/어도 안되다 ((eu)-myeon an-doe-da)

To ask for or grant permission to do something in a general sense, use the pattern ~아/어도 되요 (a/eo-do dae-yo). The negative forms are 안 ~아/어도 되요 (an-a/eo-do dae-yo) and ~아/어도 안되요 (ja-an-a-do dae-yo). To ask for or grant permission to do something in particular, do not use ~되다 (doe-da). Use ~ 좀다 (jo-ta) or ~랜단다 (gwaen-chan-ta) instead.

To refuse permission, forbid an action, or issue a warning, use the ending ~(이) 안되요 ((eu)-myeon an-dae-yo), which directly translates as “it is not all right if . . .”

(7) Expressing “old”

Although old in English signifies “aged” in most instances, the Korean equivalents have distinct connotations and are quite specific in terms of what is being described.

For items, use 오래되다 (o-rae-doe-da) to express a positive meaning, e.g.

이 그림은 오래된 것이다.
(i geu-rim-eun o-rae-do geos-i-da.)
This picture is old and venerable.

The word 날다 (nalk-da) is used to emphasize a negative meaning, e.g.

이 책상은 날았다.
(i chaek-sang-eun nalg-at-da.)
This desk is old and run-down.
When referring to oneself, younger people or animals, one uses the word 넉다 (neulg-da). For example:

나도 이제 넉었다.
(na-do i-je neulg-eot-da.)
Now I am old.

The word 나이가 많다 (na-i-ga man-ta) is used to describe oneself or other people regardless of age. However, the honorific marker ~시 (-si) should be attached if necessary, e.g.

부모님이 나이가 많으시다.
(bu-mo-nim-i na-i-ga man-eu-si-da.)
My parents are old.

When speaking of someone in a humble or deferential manner, one uses the word 연세가 많으시다 (yeon-se-ga man-eu-si-da), e.g.

부모님이 연세가 많으시다.
(bu-mo-nim-i yeon-se-ga man-eu-si-da.)
My parents are old.

(1) **Kinds of Stores**

꽃집 kkot-jip, 화원 hwa-won
다방 da-bang, 카페 ka-pec
백화점 bae-kwa-jeom
캉점 ppang-jiip, 제과점 je-gwa-jeom
사진관 sa-jin-gwan
서점 seo-jeom, 책방 chaeck-bang
슈퍼마켓 suy-peo-ma-keet
신발가게 sin-bal-kka-ge
약국 yak-guk, 약방 yak-bang
옷가게 ot-ga-ge
우체국 u-che-guk
은행 eun-haeng
장난감 가게 jang-nan-kkam ga-ge
편의점 pyeon-ui-jeom, 가게 ga-ge

(2) **Clothing**

남방 nam-bang
넥타이 nek-ta-i
모자 mo-ja
모노리 mok-do-ri
바지 ba-ji
블라우스 beul-la-u-seu
셔츠 syeo-cheu
속옷 sog-ot
스웨터 seu-we-teo
스카프 seu-ka-peu
스카프해도 seu-ta-king
양말 yang-mal

T-shirts, tennis/golf shirts
necktie
hat
muffler/scarf
pants
blouse
shirt
underwear
sweater
scarf
panty hose
socks
Putting On and Taking Off Clothes

Korean has different verbs for “to put on” or “to wear,” and “to take off,” depending on how the item is worn. For example, 입다 (ip-da) is for apparel other than headgear, footwear, or gloves. The verb 신다 (sin-tta) is for footwear, and the verb 깔다 (kki-da) is for things that fit tightly, such as gloves.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Putting On Verb</th>
<th>Taking Off Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>옷 ot clothes</td>
<td>입다 ip-da</td>
<td>벗다 beot-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>양말 yang-bal socks</td>
<td>신다 sin-tta</td>
<td>벗다 beot-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신발 sin-bal, shoes</td>
<td>신다 sin-tta</td>
<td>벗다 beot-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모자 mo-ja hat, cap</td>
<td>쓰다 sseu-da</td>
<td>벗다 beot-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안경 an-gyeong glasses</td>
<td>깔다 kki-da</td>
<td>벗다 beot-da, 벗다 ppae-da</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verb 하다 (ha-da) is used with necklaces, earrings, and other accessories.

**Darkness and Patterns**

- light
e.g. light yellow

---

- dark
e.g. dark yellow

---

- checkered

---

- striped

---

- flower-patterned

---
Lesson 7: Shopping

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 어서 오세요, 손님.่วย 찾으세요?
   eo-seo o-se-yo, son-nim. mwo chaj-eu-se-yo?
(2) 어떤 바지를하고 서초를 찾으시는데요?
   eo-tteon ba-ji-ha-go cheo-cheu-reul chaj-eu-si-neun-de-yo?
(3) 사이즈는 몇 입으세요?
    ssa-i-jeu-neun myeot ib-eu-si-neun-de-yo?
(4) 손님이 입으실 건가요, 다른 분한테 선물하실 건가요?
    son-nim-i ib-eu-sil kkeon-ga-yo, da-reun bun-han-te seon-mul-ha-sil kkeon-ga-yo?
(5) 제가 보기엔 잘 어울리는 것 같은데 손님은 어떠세요?
    je-ga bo-gi-e-neun jal eo-ul-li-neun geot gat-eun-de son-nim-eun eo-tteo-se-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 이게 요즘 재일 많이 팔리는 디자인인데요.
   i-ge yo-jeum je-il man-i pal-li-neun di-ja-in-in-de-yo.
(2) 그런데 이거 드라이 해야 되는 거 아닌가요?
   geu-reon-de i-geo deu-ra-i hae-ya doe-neun geo a-nin-ga-yo?
(3) 요즘엔 경질바지도 드라이 안 해도 되는 게 많이 나와요.
(4) 점가는 10만원인데 요즘 세일기간이라서 25프로 세일해 드리고 있어요.
(5) 요즘엔 나이드신 분들이 점갈은 색깔을 더 싶어하세요.
3. Please fill in the blanks with appropriate passive verbs:

(1) 아이가 엄마한테 (안하다:__________). a-i-ga eom-ma-ha-te (an-tta)
(2) 자기 신호등이 (보다:__________). jeeo-gi sin-ho-deung-i (bo-da)
(3) 차가 많아서 길이 (막다:__________). cha-ga man-a-seo gil-i (mak-da)
(4) 우체부가 개환테 (물다:__________). u-che-bu-ga gae-han-te (mul-da)
(5) 개환테 사과를 (뱃다:__________). gae-han-te sa-gwa-reul (ppaet-da)

4. Please fill in the blanks with appropriate words:

현준씨는 아침에 양복을 (1. ),ekte이 옷 (2. ), 구두를 (3. ), 안경을 (4. ), 모자를 (5. ) 회사에 감니다. 저녁에 집에 돌아오면 양복을 (6. ), ekte이 옷 (7. ), 구두를 (8. ), 안경을 (9. ), 모자를 (10. ) 섞니다.

5. Please write a paragraph describing your favorite fashion.

Lesson 8: Food & Restaurants
BEGINNER'S KOREAN
Lesson 8: Food & Restaurants

표현 Patterns

좋은 아침입니다.
jo-eun a-chim-im-ni-da.
Good morning.

일찍 나오셨네요.
il-jjik na-o-syeon-ne-yo.
You came out early.

오늘은 이것 저것 일이 좀 많아서요.
o-neul-eun i-geot jeo-geot il-i jom man-a-seo-yo.
That's because I have quite a lot of work to do today.

왜 별써 나오셨어요?
wae beol-sseo na-o-syecss-ko-eyo?
Why did you come so early?

오늘은 급이 별로 복잡하지 않아서 좀 일찍 도착했습니다.
o-neul-eun gil-i byeol-lo bok-ja-pa-ji an-a-seo jom il-jjik
do-cha-kaet-seum-ni-da.
There wasn't too much traffic today, so I arrived a little early.

일 시작하기 전에 같이 커피나 한잔 할까요?
il si-ja-ka-gi jeon-e ga-chi keo-pi-na han-jan hal-kka-yo?
Shall we have some coffee together before we start work?

마침 저쪽에 음료수 자판기가 있는데요.
ma-chim jeo-ijog-e eum-nyo-su ja-pan-gi-ga in-ne-yo.
Coincidentally, a drink vending machine is over there.

나는 냉커피나 한잔 할까 하는데 성민씨는 월로 하시겠어요?
a-neun naeng-keo-pi-na han-jan hal-kka ha-neun-de
seong-min-ssi-neun mwol-lo ha-si-gess-eo-yo?
I would like to have a can of iced coffee, and what would you like
to have, Seong-Min?

저도 냉커피로 하지요.
jeo-do naeng-keo-pi-ro ha-ji-yo.
I would like to have an iced coffee also.

벌써 점심시간이 다 됐군요.
It is already about time for lunch.

오늘은 인정 시간이 빨리 가네요.
o-neul-eun jeong-mal si-gan-i ppal-li ga-ne-yo.
The time (seems to) be going by so fast today.

회사 앞에 한식집이 새로 생겼는데 가 보셨습니까?
hoe-sa ap-e han-sik-jib-i sae-ro saeng-gyeon-neun-de gab
o-syeot-seum-ni-kka?
A Korean restaurant has just opened in front of the office, and have
you been there?

아니요, 아직 안 가 봤어요.
a-ni-o, a-jik an ga bwass-eo-yo.
No, I have not been there yet.

그 집은 월 잘 합니까?
geu jib-eun mwol jah-mi-kka?
What kind of dishes are good there (lit. in the house)?
나은 면도 잘 하고, 비빔밥도 맛있었습니다.
Naeng-myeon is good, and bi-bim-bap is also good.

비교적 다 괜찮습니다.
bigiyo-jeok da gwajen-chan-seum-ni-da.
All (the foods) are relatively good (there).

가게도 깨끗하고요.
ga-ge-do kkae-kkeu-ta-go-yo.
The restaurant is clean also.

그럼 날씨도 더운데 오늘은 난편이나 한 그릇 먹어 불까요?
geu-reom nal-ssi-do doeo-un-de o-neul-eun naeng-myeon-i-na han
gue-reut meog-eo bol-kka-yo?
Then shall we (go to) have some naeng-myeon today since the weather is hot?

그럼 같이 나가시죠.
geu-reom ga-chi na-ga-si-jyo.
Then let's go together.

오늘은 제가 모시겠습니다.
o-neul-eun je-ga mo-si-get-seum-ni-da.
This is my treat today. (lit. I will treat you today.)

여서 오세요.
eo-seo o-se-yo.
Welcome. (lit. Come quickly.)

정사 잘 되시지요?
jang-sa jal doe-si-ji-yo?
Your business is doing well, right?

또 오셨네요.
tto o-syeon-ne-yo.
You are here again. (lit. You came again.)

어서 이리 들어오세요.
eo-seo i-ri deul-eo-o-se-yo.
Please come this way.

여기 선물하기 힘들 시원해요.
yeo-gi seon-pung-gi ap-i je-il si-won-hae-yo.
This, in front of the fan, is the coolest spot.

오늘은 제가 우리 과장님도 모시고 왔으니까 특별히 더 잘 해 주셔야 됩니다.
o-neul-eun je-ga u-ri gwa-jang-nim-do mo-si-go wass-eu-ni-kka
teuk-byeol-hi deo jal hae ju-syeo-ya doem-ni-da.
Since I brought my manager with me today, please be especially nice.

그런 건 걱정 마세요.
geu-reon geon geok-jeong-ha-ji ma-se-yo.
Don't worry about that.

오늘은 왜로 해 드릴까요?
o-neul-eun mwol-lo hae deu-riil-kka-yo?
What would you like today? (lit. What do you want me to cook for you?)

물냉면으로 하시겠습니까, 비빔냉면으로 하시겠습니까?
mul-lang-myeon-eu-ro ha-si-get-seum-ni-kka,
bi-bim-naeng-myeon-eu-ro ha-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
Would you like to have naeng-myeon soup or hot-paste naeng-myeon?
나는 떡볶이 좋아요.
na-neun mul-lang-myeon-i jo-ken-ne-yo.
Naeng-myeon soup sounds good to me. (*lit. Naeng-myeon soup would be good for me.*)

여기 물병이 하나하고 비빔병 하나 밖에 좀 갖다 주세요.
yeo-gi mul-lang-myeon ha-na-li-ago bi-bim-naeng-myeon ha-na
ppal-li jom gat-da ju-se-yo.
Please bring a naeng-myeon soup and a hot-paste naeng-myeon here quickly.

비빔병은 너무 맵지 않게 해 주세요.
bi-bim-naeng-myeon-eun neo-mu maep-ji an-ke hae ju-se-yo.
Please do not make the hot-paste naeng-myeon too spicy.

냉수하고 물수건도 좀 갖다 주세요.
Please give us some cold water and wet towels too.

급방 마다 드릴게요.
I will bring it right away.

여기 냉면 나왔습니다.
yeo-gi naeng-myeon na-wat-seum-ni-da.
Here comes your naeng-myeon.

이 파전은 서비스로 드리는 거니까 맛있게 드세요.
i pa-jeon-eum sseo-bi-sseu-ro deu-ri-neun geo-ni-kka mas-it-ge
deu-se-yo.
This scallion pancake is on the house, so please enjoy it.

잘 먹겠습니다.
jal meok-get-seum-ni-da.
We will enjoy it.

음식이 일에 맞습니까?
eum-sig-i ib-e maj-eu-sim-ni-kka?
Did you like the food? (*lit. The food fits your taste?*)

정말 국물도 시원하고 참 맛있네요.
jeong-mal gung-mul-do si-won-ha-go cham mas-in-ne-yo.
The soup is very cool and nice, and quite delicious.

앞으로 자주 와어겠어요.
ap-eu-ro ja-ju wa-ya-gess-eo-yo.
I should come more often from now on.

그래서 저도 요즘 이 집 단골이 됐지 않습니까?
geu-rae-seo jeo-do yo-jeum i jip dan-gol-i dwaej-ji an-seum-ni-kka?
That's why I am a regular customer at this place, you know?

먹먼에 잘 먹었습니다.
deok-bun-e jal meog-eot-seum-ni-da.
Thanks to you, I had a great meal.

다음 번에 내가 사지요.
I will treat you next time.

그럼 이제 일어날까요?
geu-reom i-je il-eo-nal-kka-yo?
Should we leave now?

여기 모두 얼마일까요?
yeo-gi mo-du eol-ma-im-ni-kka?
How much was that altogether here?

여기 있습니다.
yeo-gi it-seum-ni-da.
Here it is.
대화 Model Conversations

(1)

김현준: 안녕하세요, 박성민씨. 좋은 아침입니다.
an-nyeong-ha-se-yo, bak-seong-min-ssi. jo-eun
a-chim-im-ni-da.

박성민: 안녕하십니까, 김과장님. 일찍 나왔네요.
an-nyeong-ha-sim-ni-kka, gim-gwa-jang-nim. il-ijik
na-o-syeon-ne-yo.

김현준: 네, 오늘은 이것저것 일이 좀 많아서요. 그래서 박민
씨는 왜 빨리 나오셨어요?
ne, o-neul-eun i-geot jeeo-geot il-i jom man-a-seo-
yo. geu-reon-de seong-min-ssi-neun wae beol-sseo
na-o-syeoss-eo-yo?

박성민: 오늘은 같이 별로 복잡하지 않어서 좀 일찍 도착했습
니다.
o-neul-eun gil-i byeol-lo bok-ja-pa-ji an-a-seo jom il-ijik
do-cha-kaet-seum-ni-da.

김현준: 그렇군요. 그럼 우리 일시작하기 전에 같이 커피나
한잔 할까요?
geu-reo-kun-yo. geu-reom u-ri il si-ja-ka-gi jeon-e ga-chi
keo-pi-na han-jan hal-kka-yo?

박성민: 네, 출시다. 아침 저녁에 음료수 자판기가 있는데요.
ne, jot-seum-ni-da. ma-chim jeeo-jjog-e eum-nyo-su ja-
pan-gi-ga in-ne-yo.

김현준: 나는 생커피나 한잔 할까 하는데 박민씨는 콜로 하시
겠어요?
na-neun naeng-keo-pi-na han-jan hal-kka ha-neun-de
seong-min-ssi-neun mwol-lo ha-si-gess-eo-yo?

박성민: 저도 생커피로 하지요.
joo-do naeng-keo-pi-ro ha-ji-yo.
김현준: 아이구, 덜써 점심시간이 다 됐군요. 오늘은 정말 시간이 빨리 가네요.

박성민: 과장님, 회사 앞에 한식집이 새로 생겼는데 보셨습니까?
gwa-jang-nim, hoe-sa ap-e han-sik-jib-i sae-ro saeng-geyon-neun-de gab o-syeot-seum-ni-kka?

김현준: 아니요, 아직 안 가 봤어요. 그 집은 월요일 할까요?
a-ni-o, ajik an ga bwass-eo-yo. gu jib-eun mwol jal ham-ni-kka?

박성민: 냉면도 잘 하고, 비빔밥도 맛있고, 비교적 다 괜찮습니다. 가게도 깨끗하고요.

김현준: 그래요? 그럼 날씨도 더운데 오늘은 냉면이나 한 그릇 먹어 콜까요?

박성민: 그럼 같이 나가시죠. 오늘은 제가 모시겠습니다.

주인: 어서 오세요.
eo-seo o-se-yo.

박성민: 이미 먹어 보셨어요? 장사 잘 되시지요?
a-ju-meo-ni, an-nyeon-ha-se-yo? jang-sa jal doe-si-jy-yo?

주인: 아이구, 또 오셨네요. 어서 이리 들어오세요. 여기 선 품이 많이 제일 시원해요.
a-i-gu, tto o-syeon-ne-yo. eo-seo i-ri deul-eo o-se-yo.
yeo-gi seon-pung-gi ap-i je-il si-won-hae-yo.
Lesson 8: Food & Restaurants

영문번역 English Translation

(1)
Kim: Hello, Mr. Seong-Min Park. Good morning.
Park: Hello, manager Mr. Kim. You came out early.
Kim: Yes, I have quite a lot of work to do today. By the way, why did you come to work so early?
Park: There wasn’t too much traffic today, so I arrived a little early.
Kim: I see. Then would you like to have a coffee with me before we start work?
Park: Yes, that sounds good. Luckily a drink vending machine is over there.
Kim: I would like to have a can of iced coffee, and what would you like to have?
Park: I would like to have iced coffee also.
Kim: Wow, it is already time for lunch. The time seems to be going by so fast today.
Park: Manager, a Korean restaurant has just opened in front of the office, and have you been there?
Kim: No, I have not been there yet. What kinds of dishes are good there?
Park: Naeng-myeon is good, bi-bim-bap is good, and all the foods are relatively good there. The restaurant is clean also.
Kim: Really? Then, since the weather is hot, shall we go to try some naeng-myeon today?
Park: Then let’s go together. This is my treat today.

(2)
Kim: Hello, Mr. Seong-Min Park. Good morning.
Park: Hello, manager Mr. Kim. You came out early.
Kim: Yes, I have quite a lot of work to do today. By the way, why did you come to work so early?
Park: There wasn’t too much traffic today, so I arrived a little early.
Kim: I see. Then would you like to have a coffee with me before we start work?
Park: Yes, that sounds good. Luckily a drink vending machine is over there.
Kim: I would like to have a can of iced coffee, and what would you like to have?
Park: I would like to have iced coffee also.
Kim: Wow, it is already time for lunch. The time seems to be going by so fast today.
Park: Manager, a Korean restaurant has just opened in front of the office, and have you been there?
Kim: No, I have not been there yet. What kinds of dishes are good there?
Park: Naeng-myeon is good, bi-bim-bap is good, and all the foods are relatively good there. The restaurant is clean also.
Kim: Really? Then, since the weather is hot, shall we go to try some naeng-myeon today?
Park: Then let’s go together. This is my treat today.

(3)
Owner: Welcome.
Park: Hello, ma’am. How are you? Your business is doing well, right?
Owner: Oh, you are here again. Please come this way. This, in front of the fan, is the coolest spot.

Park: Since I brought my manager with me today, please be especially nice.

Owner: Of course, don't worry about that. By the way, what would you like today?

Park: Sir, would you like naeng-myeon soup or hot-paste naeng-myeon?

Kim: Well . . . naeng-myeon soup sounds good to me.

Park: Ma'am, please bring us a naeng-myeon soup and a hot-paste naeng-myeon quickly. Please do not make the hot-paste naeng-myeon too spicy, and give us some cold water and wet towels too.

Owner: Sure. I will bring it right away.

(A bit later)

Owner: Here is your naeng-myeon. And this scallion pancake is on the house, so please enjoy it.

Park: Thank you, maam. We will enjoy it.

(After the meal)

Park: Manager, did you like the food?

Kim: The soup was really cool and nice, and very delicious. I should come more often.

Park: That's why I am a regular customer at this place, you know?

Kim: I see. Thanks to you, I had a great meal. I will treat you next time. Should we leave now?

Park: OK. Ma'am, how much was that altogether?

Owner: One moment . . . That will be twelve thousand won.

Park: Here it is. Do a lot of business.

Owner: Thank you. Good-bye. Come again.

어휘 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

가게 ga-ge
과정님 gwa-jang-nim
국물 gung-mul
길 gil
냉면 naeng-myeon
냉수 naeng-su
냉짜피 naeng-keo-pi
다음 반 da-eum-beon
담글 dan-gol
만약원 man-i-cheon-won
많다 man-ta
물냉면 mul-laeng-myeon
물수건 mul-ssu-geon
비빔냉면 bi-bim-naeng-myeon
비빔밥 bi-bim-ppap
서비스 ssseo-bi-seu
선물기 seon-pung-gi
시간 si-gan
식사 후 sik-sa hu
아주머니 a-ju-meo-ni
앞 알 yeo-gi
오늘 o-neul
우리 u-ri
음료수 eum-nyo-su
음식 eum-sik
이것 저것 i-geot jeo-geot
일 il
자판기 ja-pan-gi
잠시 후 jam-si hu

store, shop
department manager
soup
street, road
cold noodle
ice water
iced coffee
next time
regular customer
time
cold noodle with hot paste
wet towel
rice with mixed vegetable service
fan
after a/the meal
middle-aged woman
front
today
here
we, us
drink
food
this and that
things, work
banding machine
after a while
### Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가 보다 ga bo-da</td>
<td>to have been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갖다 드리다 gat-da deu-ri-da</td>
<td>to bring or take something (hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갖다 주다 gat-da ju-da</td>
<td>to bring or take something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갔다 gwaen-chan-ta</td>
<td>to be OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깨끗하다 kkae-kkeu-ta-da</td>
<td>to be clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나가다 na-ga-da</td>
<td>to go out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나오다 na-o-da</td>
<td>to come out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>되다 da doc-da</td>
<td>to be all done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단골이 되다 dan-gol-i doe-da</td>
<td>to become a regular customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엽다 deop-da</td>
<td>to be hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도착하다 do-cha-ka-da</td>
<td>to arrive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드리다 deu-ri-da</td>
<td>to give (hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들다 deul-da</td>
<td>to eat (hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어오다 deul-eo-o-da</td>
<td>to enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맛있다 mass-it-da</td>
<td>to be tasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹다 meok-da</td>
<td>to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹이 보다 meog-eo bo-da</td>
<td>to try to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모시고 오다 mo-si-go o-da</td>
<td>to bring someone (hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모시다 mo-si-da</td>
<td>to take care (hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>복잡하다 bok-ja-pa-da</td>
<td>to be busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사다 sa-da</td>
<td>to buy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Adverbs / Conjunctions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>같이 ga-chi</td>
<td>together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>급방 geum-bang</td>
<td>soon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>너무 neo-mu</td>
<td>too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>덕분에 deok-bun-e</td>
<td>thanks to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>또 tto</td>
<td>again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마침 ma-chim</td>
<td>just in time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맘있게 mas-it-ge</td>
<td>to be tasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>렴지 않게 maep-ji an-ke</td>
<td>to not be hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모두 mo-du</td>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>발써 beol-sseo</td>
<td>already</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벌로 byeol-lo</td>
<td>not particularly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비교적 bi-gyo-jeok</td>
<td>relatively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>발리 ppal-li</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>새로 sae-ro</td>
<td>newly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아이구 a-i-gu</td>
<td>oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아직 a-jik</td>
<td>yet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앞으로 ap-eu-ro</td>
<td>from now on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>역시 eo-seo</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼마 eol-ma</td>
<td>how much?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>왜 wae</td>
<td>why?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>요즘 yo-jeum</td>
<td>these days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Lesson 8: Food & Restaurants

- **생기다 saeng-gi-da** to open
- **시원하다 si-won-ha-da** to be cool
- **시작하다 si-ja-ka-da** to start
- **밀어내다 il-eo-na-da** to get up
- **입에 맞다 ib-e mat-da** to fit someone's taste
- **있다 it-da** to exist
- **잘 되다 jal doe-da** to be going well
- **잘 먹다 jal meok-da** to eat well
- **잘 해 주다 jal hae ju-da** to give special care
- **팔다 pal-da** to sell
Lesson 8: Food & Restaurants

문법 Grammar

(1) Coming and Going: 오다 vs. 가다

In Korean, a movement may be described differently depending on whether the motion is away from or towards the speaker. The direction determines whether to use a form of 오다 (come) or 가다 (go) to describe the motion.

Away from the speaker: 가다 (ga-da) to go
나가다 (na-ga-da) to go out
들어가다 (deul-eo-ga-da) to enter
올라가다 (ol-la-ga-da) to go up
내려가다 (nae-ryeo-ga-da) to go down

Towards the speaker: 오다 (o-da) to come
나오다 (na-o-da) to come out
들어오다 (deul-eo-o-da) to enter
올라오다 (ol-la-o-da) to come up
내려오다 (nae-ryeo-ö-da) to come down

However, this rule does not apply when a speaker talks about his or her own action. Notice Jeong-Ho says 지금 가요 (ji-geum ga-yo), not 지금 왜요 (ji-geum wa-yo) in the following exchange:

Example:
A: 점호씨 왜 안 오세요?
   (jeong-ho-ssi wae an o-se-yo?)
   Jeong-Ho, why you do not come?

B: 지금 가요.
   (ji-geum ga-yo.)
   I am coming.
(2) Before and After: ~기 전에 (gi jeon-e) vs. ~고 나서 (go na-seo) and ~(으)로 다음에/주에 ((eun) da-eum-e/hu-e)

The pattern [verb + ~기 전에 (gi jeon-e)] indicates that the second action occurs before the first one is completed. As such, the first clause never uses the past tense. When a noun is used in place of a verb, add 전에 to the noun. For example:

휴가가 시작하기 전에... (hyu-ga si-ja-ga-gi jeon-e)
Before the vacation starts...

휴가 시작 전에... (hyu-ga si-jak jeon-e)
Before the start of the vacation...

The pattern [verb + ~고 나서 (go na-seo)] indicates that the first action has been completed and the second is forthcoming. It is never used with a descriptive verb stem and does not use a past tense marker. Expressions that can be used interchangeably are ~(은) 다음에, and, in written Korean,

휴가가 시작하고 나서... (hyu-ga-ga si-jak ga-gi jeon-e)
After the vacation starts...

휴가 시작한 다음에... (hyu-ga-ga si-ja-kan da-eum-e)
After the start of the vacation...

(3) Negation (the negative form of predicates)

To negate a predicate using short-form negative markers, place the negative adverb 안 (do not) or 못 (cannot) immediately before the predicate. The negative of the predicate 가요 (ga-yo) is 안가요 (an ga-yo) and 못가요 (mot ga-yo), the negative of 먹어요 (meog-eo-yo) is 안 먹어요 (an meog-eo-yo) and 못 먹어요 (mot meog-eo-yo), and the negative of 외요 (wa-yo) is 안 외요 (an wa-yo) and 못 외요 (mot wa-yo).

The word 못 (cannot) is used instead of 안 (do not) when one's circumstances do not permit the action of the verb.

To negate an action verb following the pattern of [noun] +하다, place 안 or 못 between the noun and the verb, as in:

장화 안 해요. (jeon-hwa an hae-yo.)
I do not call.

일 안 해요. (il an hae-yo.)
I do not work.

장화 못 해요. (jeon-hwa mot hae-yo.)
I cannot call.

일 못 해요. (il mot hae-yo.)
I cannot work.

To negate a descriptive verb using the pattern of [noun] +하다, place 안 before the noun. Examples:

안 피곤해요. (an pi-gon-hae-yo.)
I am not tired.

안 착해요. (an cha-kae-yo.)
I am not kind/nice.

To use the more formal long-form negative marker often found in writing, add the endings ~지 않다 (ji an-ta) or ~지 못하다 (ji mo-ta-da) to the verb, e.g.

저는 가지 못해요. (jeo-neun ga-ji mo-tae-yo.)
I can't go.
I can't eat.

I don't go.

I don't eat.

To indicate not to do something, use the ending ~지 마세요 (ji ma-se-yo), e.g.

Please don't drink coffee.

To express the idea of Please don't do A; do B instead, use the pattern ~지 말고 ... ~(으)세요 (ji mal-go ... (eu)-se-yo). For example:

Please don't drink coffee; drink water instead.

There are verbs that have unique negative forms. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Negative Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>있다 vs. 없다</td>
<td>있어요 there is ...</td>
<td>없어요 there is not ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-da / cop-ta</td>
<td>iss-eo-ya</td>
<td>eops-eo-ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이다 vs. 아니다</td>
<td>이예요 it is ...</td>
<td>아니예요 it is not ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-da / a-ni-da</td>
<td>i-e-ya</td>
<td>a-ni-e-ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알다 vs. 모르다</td>
<td>알어요 I know ...</td>
<td>모르어요 I don't know ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-da / mo-reu-da</td>
<td>al-a-ya</td>
<td>mol-la-ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋다 vs. 싫다</td>
<td>좋아요 I like ...</td>
<td>싫어요 I don't like ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jo-ta / sil-ta</td>
<td>jo-a-ya</td>
<td>sil-co-ya</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(4) “Doing something for someone”: ~아/어 주다 (a/eo ju-da) vs. ~아/어 드리다 (a/eo deu-ri-da)

When the pattern ~아/어 주다 is used, it means that one is performing the action of the verb for the benefit of another person. The past tense is ~아/어 써어요 (a/eo jwoss-eo-ya), and the future tense is ~아/어 줄 거예요 (a/eo jul kkeo-ye-ya).

과여주다 (ilg-eo-ju-da) to read for someone's benefit

갈아주다 (nol-a-ju-da) to play for someone's benefit

밀려주다 (bil-lyeo-ju-da) to lend for someone's benefit

도와주다 (do-wa-ju-da) to help for someone's benefit

When requesting something for the benefit of the speaker, use ~아/어 주세요. This means, “Please do ... for me.” Examples:

Please help me.

Please say that again for me.

Thank you (very much) for helping me.
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

Lesson 8: Food & Restaurants

242

Thank you for coming.

The plain form of 아/어 주다 is used with a person of lower social status or age. The humble form 아/어 드리다 is used with someone of a higher social status or age.

아/어 주다 (plain):

친구가 점심을 사 주었습니다.
(chin-gu-ga jeom-sim-eul sa ju-eot-seum-ni-da.)
My friend bought me a lunch.

아/어 주시다 (subject honorific):

아버지께서 점심을 사 주셨습니다.
(a-beo-ji-kke jeom-sim-eul sa ju-syeot-seum-ni-da.)
My father bought me a lunch.

아/어 드리다 (humble):

제가 아버지께 점심을 사 드렸습니다.
(je-ga a-beo-ji-kke jeom-sim-eul sa deu-ryeot-seum-ni-da.)
I bought a lunch for my father.

아/어 드리시다 (subject honorific & humble):

아버지께서 할머니께 점심을 사 드리셨습니다.
(a-beo-ji-kke-seo hal-meo-ni-kke jeom-sim-eul sa deu-ryeot-seum-ni-da.)
My father bought a lunch for my grandmother.

(5) “Have to, must”: 아/어야 되다 (a/eo-ya doe-da)

When indicating that one has to or must do something, the ending 아/어야 되다 is used. Examples:

지금 가야 되요. (ji-geum ga-ya dwae-yo.)
I have to go now.

조용히 해야 되요. (jo-yong-hi hae-ya dwae-yo.)
We must be quiet.

(6) “Be thinking of ~ing” (으) kk a 하다 ((eu)-kka ha-da)

The construction of the verb stem + (으) kk a 하다 is used to express a tentative thought about what one might do. The pattern means “I am/we are thinking of ~ing.” Examples:

오늘은 피곤해서 잠자기 잘래 해요.
(o-nul-cun pi-gon-hae-seo il-jjik jal-kka hae-yo.)
Since I am tired today, I am thinking of going to bed early.

저녁에 피자나 음악을 해요.
(je-nyeog-e pi-ja-na meog-eul-kka hae-yo.)
I am thinking of having a pizza at dinner.

(7) Expressing experience: 아/어 보다 (a/e obo-da)

The pattern 아/어 보다 conveys that the action of the main verb indicates an experience, an attempt, or a suggestion that someone try something.

서울에 가 보셨어요? (seo-ul-e gab o-syeoss-eo-yo?)
Have you been in Korea?
(8) Bringing (someone or something) / Taking (someone or something)

It is important to know two things when deciding on the correct equivalent for *bring* and *take*. The first is whether what is being brought or taken is a person. The second, if it is a person, is to determine whether age and/or standing necessitates the more deferential term. First it should be determined. One uses 가지고 오다 (ga-ji-go o-da) or 가지고 가다 (ga-jid ga-da) for items, e.g.

공을 가지고 왔다. (gong-eul ga-ji-go wat-da.)
I brought the ball.

With younger people or those of lower status, one uses 데리고 오다 (de-ri-go o-da) or 데리고 가다 (de-ri-go ga-da), e.g.

등생을 데리고 왔다. (dong-saeng-eul de-ri-go wat-da.)
I brought my younger sibling.

With older people or those of higher status, one uses the honorific 모시고 오다 (mo-si-go o-da) or 모시고 가다 (mo-si-go ga-da), e.g.

부모님을 모시고 왔다. (bu-mo-nim-eul mo-si-go wat-da.)
I brought my parents.

가지르면 성분으로 보세요. (a-ri-o, a-jik an ga bwass-eo-yo.)
No, I haven't yet.

Really? Then please do/try it once.

---

**Meals**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>아침 a-chim</td>
<td>breakfast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점심 jeom-sim</td>
<td>lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저녁 jeo-nyeok</td>
<td>dinner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Restaurants**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>양식 yang-sik</td>
<td>Western food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>양식당 yang-sik-dang</td>
<td>Western restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일식 il-sik</td>
<td>Japanese food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일식당 il-sik-dang</td>
<td>Japanese restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중국식 jung-sik</td>
<td>Chinese food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중국식당 jung-sik-dang</td>
<td>Chinese restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한식 han-sik</td>
<td>Korean food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한식당 han-sik-dang</td>
<td>Korean restaurant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Customer**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>손님 son-nim</td>
<td>customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>종업원 jong-eob-won</td>
<td>waiter, waitress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계산서 gye-san-seo</td>
<td>check, bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가스톱 geo-seu-reum-ton</td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>음식 eum-sik</td>
<td>food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>음료수 eum-nyo-su</td>
<td>beverage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>메뉴 me-nyu</td>
<td>menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자리 ja-ri</td>
<td>seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주문하다 ju-mun-ha-da</td>
<td>to order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시키다 si-ki-da</td>
<td>to order</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tastes

상결다 sing-geop-da to be blended
짜다 jja-da to be salty
시다 si-da to be sour
맵다 maep-da to be spicy/hot
달다 dal-da to be sweet
쓰다 tteu-da to be tart
배가 부른다 bae-ga bu-ru-da to be full
배가 고프다 bae-ga go-peu-da to be hungry
먹이 마르다 mog-i ma-reu-da to be thirsty
맛이 있다 mas-i, it-da to be delicious
맛이 없다 mas-i eop-da to not be delicious

Basics for Korean-style Dishes

밥 bap cooked rice (usually steamed rice)
국 guk soup
김치 gim-chi kimchi
반찬 ban-chan side dishes

Meat 고기 go-gi

소고기 so-go-gi beef
닭고기 dak-go-gi chicken
생선 saeng-seon fish
돼지고기 dwae-ji-go-gi pork

Drinks 마실 것/음료수 ma-sil-kkeot/eum-nyo-su

물 mul water
커피 keo-pi coffee
A restaurant is sometimes called a(36,239),(478,271), or house, especially when referring to the type of food in which it specializes. In most Korean restaurants, it is not necessary to wait to be seated. Feel free to seat oneself at any open table. Many restaurants post their menus on the wall. As such, one should wave or call the waitress over when one is ready to order. Middle-aged waitresses are referred to as middle-aged ma (a-jum-ma). Along with the order, one receives several side dishes and a bowl of rice. The rice is refilled at a nominal or no charge. When multiple people are eating together at one table, there will only be one bill unless individual bills are requested. This is because friends usually take turns paying for the whole meal. Although fine restaurants produce a bill stating the amount owed, most regular restaurants do not provide one. The customer is expected to pay at the counter on the way out. There is no sales tax and tipping is not customary. If you sit at a table with chairs, shoes are not removed. However, if one is seated on the floor, usually in a separate room, shoes must be removed.

Hotel restaurants are similar to American-style ones in that they do not follow many of these rules. Regular customers may even receive a delicacy as a side dish for free.

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 우리 일시적하기 전에 같이 커피나 한잔 할까요?
   u-ri il si-ja-ka gi jeon-e ga-chi keo-pi na han-jan hal-kka-yo?
(2) 저는 커피 마실는데 your name씨는 뭐로 하시겠어요?
   jeo-neun keo-pi ma-sil-kkeon-de ____ ssi-neun mwol-lo ha-si-gess-eo-yo?
(3) 회사 앞에 음식점이 새로 생겼는데 가 보셨어요?
   hoe-sa ap-e eum-sik-jeom-i se-ro saeng-gyeon-neun-de ga bo-syeoess-eo-yo?
(4) 오늘은 왜 이렇게 일찍 나오셨어요?
   o-neul-eun wae i-reo-ke il-jiik na-o-syeoess-eo-yo?
(5) 오늘은 몇 드시겠습니까?
   o-neul-eun mwol deu-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
(6) 음식이 엄마 맞으십니까?
   eum-sig-i ib-e maj-eu-sim-ni-kka?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 오늘은 정말 시간이 별로 가네요.
   o-neul-eun jeong-mal si-gan-i ppal-li ga-né-yo.
(2) 비교적 음식이 다 괜찮습니다. 가게도 괜찮다고요.
(3) 오늘은 제가 요시겠습니까?
   o-neul-eun je-ga mo-si-get-seum-ni-da.
(4) 오늘은 제가 손님도 모시고 왔으니까 특별히 더 잘 해 주셔야 합니다.
   o-neul-eun je-ga son-nim-do mo-si-go was-eu-ni-kka teuk-byeol-hi deo jal haec ju-syeo-ya ham-ni-da.
(5) 여기 방수하고 물수건도 좀 갖다 주세요.
   yeo-gi naeng-su-ha-go mul-ssu-geon jom gat-da ju-se-yo.
Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons

메타 패턴

어느 분 찾아 오셨어요?
eo-neu bun chaj-a o-syeoss-eo-yo?
Are you looking for anybody? (lit. How are you looking for?)

아무 분이나 괜찮아요.
a-mu bun-i-na gwaen-chan-a-yo.
Any one is fine.

파마 하실 건가요?
pa-ma ha-sil kken-ga-yo?
Are you going to get a perm for your hair?

저는 파마 할 거고요, 오빠는 커프만 할 건데요.
joe-neun pa-ma hal kkeo-go-yo, o-ppa-neun keo-teu-man hal kkeon-de-yo.
I am going to get a perm, and my brother is just getting a haircut.

얼마나 기다려야 돼요?
eol-ma-na gi-da-ryeo-ya dwae-yo?
How long do we have to wait?

한 15분만 기다리시면 될 것 같んですね.
About 15 minutes. (lit. It seems to be done if you wait only about 15 minutes.)

저쪽에 앉아서 잠깐만 기다리세요.
Please sit over there and wait a little.

Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons

기다리시는 동안 뭐 마실 것 좀 갖다 드릴까요?
Would you like something to drink while you are waiting?

저는 커피 한잔 주시겠어요?
joe-neun keo-pi han-jan ju-si-gess-eo-yo?
Would you please give me a cup of coffee?

저는 괜찮아요.
joe-neun gwaen-chan-a-yo.
I am fine.

그냥 한잔이나 한잔 주세요.
gcu-nyang chan-mul-i-na han-jan ju-se-yo.
Just give me a cup of cold water, please.

여기 커피하고 물 있습니다.
yeo-gi keo-pi-ha-go mul it-seum-ni-da.
Here is your coffee and your water.

기다리시는 동안 이 잡지 좀 보시겠어요?
gi-da-ri-si-neun dong-an i jap-ji jom bo-si-gess-co-yo?
Would you like to look at these magazines while you are waiting?

손님, 이쪽으로 앉으세요.
son-nim, i-jjog-eu-ro anj-eu-se-yo.
Please sit here, ma'am (lit. customer).

머리 어떻게 해 드릴까요?
meo-ri eo-teo-ke hae deu-ri-l-kka-yo?
How would you like your hair done? (lit. How would you like for me to do your hair?)
BEGINNER’S KOREAN

스트레이트 피마 하려고 하는데요.

seu-teu-re-i-teu pa-ma ha-ryeo-go ha-neun-de-yo.
I would like (lit. am trying) to get my hair straightened (lit. straight perm).

머리 길이는 자르지 마시고요.

meo-ri gil-i-neun ja-reu-ji ma-si-go-yo.
Don’t cut the hair (lit. hair length), please.

제가 보기에는 앞머리 길이에 맞춰서 엽머리로 레이어를 줄주는 게 더 나을 것 같네요.

The way I look at it, layering (lit. giving some layer on) your side hair by matching it with the length of your bangs would be much better.

머리 속이 많아서 레이어가 없으면 너무 닭답해 보일 것 같아요.

meo-ri su-chi man-a-seo le-i-eo-ga eops-eu-myeon neo-mu dap-dapae bo-il kkeot gat-a-yo.
Your hair is pretty thick, so it will look stuffy without the layering.

그럼 그렇게 해 주세요.

geu-reom al-a-seo hae ju-se-yo.
Then please do it that way.

머리 색깔이 너무 까마니까 염색 한번 해 보세요.

meo-ri saek-kkal-i neo-mu kappa-ma-ni-kka yeom-saek han-beon hae bo-se-yo.
Your hair color is quite (lit. too) dark, so try tinting your hair.

그럼 안상이 훨씬 부드러워 보이요.

geu-reom in-sang-i hwol-ssin bu-deu-reo-wo bo-yeo-yo.
Then your face (will) look softer.

Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons

머리를 염색하면 어떻게 손질해야 돼요?

meo-ri-reul yeom-sae-ka-myeon eo-teo-ke son-jil-hae-ya dwae-yo?
After tinting my hair, how should I take care of it?

머리 길고 나서 수건으로 잘 말린 다음에 헤어 크림만 조금 발라 주시면 돼요.

After washing your hair, dry it well with a towel, and put a little hair cream on it.

머리 길이 많이 상하니까 드라이는 안 하시는 게 낫고요.

meo-ri kkyeol-i man-i sang-ha-ni-kka deu-ra-i-neun an ha-si-neun ge nat-go-yo.
Because your hair will be damaged, it is better not to blow-dry the hair.

그럼 얻어서 해 주세요.

geu-reom al-a-seo hae ju-se-yo.
Then please do what you think would look good (on me).

저한테 잘 어울리게 해 주세요.

jeo-han-te jal eo-il-li-ge ye-ppeu-ge hae ju-se-yo.
Please do it so it would look good on me. (lit. Please do it pretty and match well with me.)

어떻게 잘라 드릴까요?

eo-teo-ke jal-la deu-ri-l-kka-yo?
How would you like your hair cut?

머리 모양은 바꾸지 마시고 그냥 좀 짧게 다듬어 주세요.

meo-ri mo-yang-eun ba-kku-ji ma-si-go geu-nyang jom jjalp-ge da-deum-eo ju-se-yo.
Don’t change the shape of the hair and just trim it so it’s a little shorter.
청바리하고 얻어리는 좀 짧게 깎고 앉어리는 너무 짧지 않게 해주세요.

dwin-meo-ri-ha-go yeom-meo-ri-neunjom jjalp-ge kkak-go
am-meo-ri-neun neo-mu jjalp-ji an-ke hae ju-se-yo.
Please cut the hair on the back and on the sides a little shorter, but
do not cut the front hair too short.

머리가 많이 가네요.
meo-ri-ga man-i gi-ne-yo.
Your hair is pretty long.

 언제 머리 자르셨어요?
eon-je meo-ri ja-reu-syeoss-eo-yo?
When was the last time you had your hair cut? (lit. When did you have a haircut?)

두 달 밖에 안 됐는데 그래요.
du-dal bakk-e an dwaen-neun-de geu-rae-yo.
It has been only two months.

머리가 날들보다 빨리 자라나봐요.
I guess my hair grows faster than other people's.

어허세요? 마음에 드세요?
eo-tteo-se-yo? ma-eum-e deu-se-yo?
How is it? Do you like it?

괜찮은 것 같은데요.
gwaen-chan-eun geot gat-eun-de-yo.
It looks fine.

그럼 이쪽으로 오세요. 머리 감아 드릴께요.
geu-reom i-ijog-eu-ro o-se-yo. meo-ri gam-a deu-riikke-yo.
Then come over here, please. I will wash your hair.

다 왔습니다. 두분 다 수고 많이 하셨습니다.
It's all done. You both had a lot of work done (lit. went through a lot of work).
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

CHS Model Conversations

Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons

(1)

Changyoun: 어서 오세요, 쓰네요. 어느 분 찾아 오셨어요?
eoseo o-se-yo, son-nim eo-neu bun chaj-a
osyeoss-co-yo?

Hyehun: 아무 분이나 콜채야요.
a-mu bun-i-na gwaen-chan-a-yo.

Changyoun: 파마 하실 건가요?
pama ha-sil kecon-ga-yo?

Hyehun: 네, 저는 파마 할 거요, 오빠는 컷만 할 견데요. 얼마나 기다려야 되요?
ne, jeo-neun pa-ma hal kkeon-go-yo, o-ppa-neun keo-teum-an hal kkeon-de-yo. eol-ma-na gi-da-ryo-yo-da dwae-yo?

Changyoun: 한 15분만 기다리시면 될 것 같네요. 지금 앉아서 장만한 기다리세요.

기다리는 동안 레시 앞에 앉고 마실 것 좀 갖다 드릴까요?

Hyehun: 네, 그럼 저는 커피 한잔 주시겠어요?
ne, gueu-reom jeo-neun keo-pi han-jan ju-si-gess-co-yo?

Ishin: 저는 콜채야요. 그냥 잔물이나 한잔 주세요.
jeo-neun gwaen-chan-a-yo. jeo-nyang chan-mul-i-na han-jan ju-se-yo.

Changyoun: (잠시 후) 여기 커피하고 물 있습니다. 기다리는 동안 이 잠시 줄 보시겠어요?
(jam-si hu) yeo-gi keo-pi-ha-go mul it-seum-ni-da.
gi-da-ri-si-neun dong-an i jap-ji jom bo-si-gess-co-yo?

Hyehun: 네, 고맙습니다.
ne, go-map-seum-ni-da.

(2)

Muyeol: 손님, 이쪽으로 앉으세요. 머리 여르게 해 드릴까요?
son-nim, i-ijogi-e-ro anj-a-seoyo. meo-ri eo-tteo-ke hae deu-ri-kka-yo?

Hyehun: 스트레이트 파마 하려고 하는데요. 머리 길이는 자르지 마시고요.
seu-teu-re-i-teu pa-ma ha-ryo-go ha-neun-de-yo. meo-ri gil-i-neun jja-teu-ji ma-si-go-yo.

Muyeol: 제가 보기에는 앞머리 길이에 맞추려 염려되리라 레이어를 줄주는 게 더 나을 것 같네요.

머리 숫이 많아서 레이어가 없으면 너무 덜할해 보일 것 같아요.
meo-ri su-chi man-a-seo le-i-eo-ga eops-eu-myeon neo-mu dap-da-pae bo-il kket gat-a-yo.

Hyehun: 그럼 그렇게 해 주세요.

Muyeol: 그리고 머리색깔이 너무 깃이니가 영색 한번 해 보세요. 그럼 인상이 높진 부드러워 보이요.

Hyehun: 그래요? 그런데 머리염색하면 어떻게 손질해야 되요?

Muyeol: 똑 깔아요. 머리 감고 나서 수건으로 잘 말린 다음에 해어크림만 조금 발라 주시면 되요.
BEGINNER’S KOREAN

머리 걸이 많이 상하니까 드라이기는 안 하시는 게 낫고요.

meo-ri kkyeol-i man-i sang-ha-ni-kka deu-ra-i-neun an ha-si-neun ge nat-go-yo.

이해근: 그럼 알아서 저한테 잘 어울리게 해주시기.


(3)

미용사: 그럼 이쪽으로 오세요. 머리 감아 드릴까요?
o-ppa-do i-jjog-eu-ro anj-eu-se-yo. eo-tteo-ke jal-la deu-nil-kka-yo?

이정호: 머리 모양은 바꾸지 마시고 그냥 좀 짧게 다듬어 주세요.

meo-ri mo-yang-eun ba-kku-ji ma-si-go geu-nyang jom jjalp-ge da-deum-co ju-se-yo.

맞어리하고 옛머리는 좀 짧게 깔고 앞머리는 너무 짧지 않게 해 주세요.


미용사: 알겠습니다. 여기... 머리가 많이 기네요. 언제 머리 자르셨어요?

eon-je meo-ri jja-reu-syeoss-co-yo?

이정호: 두 달밖에 안 됐는데 그래요. 머리가 남들보다 빨리 자라나네요.


미용사: (잠시 후) 어떠세요? 다음에 드세요?

(jam-si hu) eo-tteo-se-yo? ma-eum-e deu-se-yo?

이정호: 네, 관련은 것 같은데요.

ne, gwaen-chan-eun geot gat-eun-de-yo.

Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons,

미용사: 그럼 이쪽으로 오세요. 머리 감아 드릴까요.

geu-reom i-jjog-eu-ro o-se-yo. meo-ri gam-a deu-nil-kke-yo.

(잠시 후) 다 왔습니다. 두분 다 수고 많이 하셨습니다.

안녕히 가세요.

Employee: Please come in, ma'am (lit. customer). Are you looking for anybody?

Hye-Geun: Anyone is fine.

Employee: Are you going to have your hair permed?

Hye-Geun: Yes, I am going to get a perm, and my brother is just getting a haircut. How long do we have to wait?

Employee: About 15 minutes will do. Please sit over there and wait a little. Would you like something to drink while you are waiting?

Hye-Geun: Yes, then would you give me a cup of coffee?

Hye-Geun: I am fine. Just give me a cup of water, please.

Employee: Here is your coffee and your water. Would you like to look at some magazines while you are waiting?

Hye-Geun: Yes, thank you.

Hairdresser: The same. After washing your hair, dry it well with a towel, and rub a little hair cream on it. Because your hair will be damaged, it is better not to blow-dry the hair.

Hye-Geun: Then do what you think would look good on me.

Hairdresser: Sir (lit. Brother), come sit here, please. How would you like your hair cut?

Jeong-Ho: Don’t change the shape of the hair and just trim it a little. Please cut the hair on the back and on the sides a little shorter, but do not cut the front hair too much.

Hairdresser: I understand. Whew... Your hair is pretty long. When was the last time you had your hair cut?

Jeong-Ho: It has been only two months. I guess my hair grows faster than other people’s.

Hairdresser: How is it? Do you like it?

Jeong-Ho: Yes, it looks fine.

Hairdresser: Then come over here, please. I will wash your hair.

Hairdresser: It’s all done. You both had a lot of work done. Good-bye.
여취 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

길이 gil-i
남들 nam-deul
du 달 du-dal
du 분 du-bun
첫머리 āwin-meo-ri
d라이 deu-ra-i
레이어 le-i-eo
마실 것 ma-sil keot
머리 meo-ri
머리 걸 meo-ri kkyeol
머리 속 meo-ri sut
머리색깔 meo-ri-saek-kkal
모양 mo-yang
물 mul
뭐 mwo
손님 son-nim
수건 su-geon
스트레이트 피마 seu-teu-re-i-teu pa-ma

length
other people
two months
two people (hon.)
back hair
blow dry
layer
something to drink
head, hair
hair quality
hair volume, hair density
hair color
shape
water
what, something
customer

towel
hair straightening
(lit. straight perm)

驗 among a-mu bun
앞머리 am-meo-ri
어느 분 eo-neu-bun
여기 yeo-gi
염색 yeom-saek
염머리 yeom-meo-ri
인상 in-sang
잡지 jap-jī
종업원 jong-eop-won
천물 chan-mul
커피 keo-pi

Verbs

갖다 드리다 gat-da deu-ri-da
go_map-da
нстру하다 gwaen-chan-ta
가다리다 gi-da-ri-da
갈다 gil-da
c 암마 kka-ma-ta
c kkak-da
c 되다 da doe-da
c 다음에 주다 da-deum-eo ju-da
 대답해 보이다 dap-dap-hae bo-i-da
c 같 다 ttok gat-da
레이어블 주다 le-i-co-reul ju-da
마음에 들다 ma-eum-e deul-da
c 많다 man-ta
c 말리다 mal-li-da
c 맞추다 mat-chu-da
c 머리 갈다 meo-ri gam-tta
바꾸다 ba-kku-da
c 바라 주다 bal-la ju-da
부드럽다 bu-deu-reo-pa
c 부드러워 보이다 bu-deu-reo-wo bo-i-da
상하다 sang-ha-da
손절하다 son-jil-ha-da
수고하다 su-go-ha-da
양하다 an-tta
말다 al-da

Han 15분 han sib-o-bun
한번 han-beon
한잔 han jan
헤어 크림 he-eo keu-rim

about 15 minutes
once
one cup
hair cream

to bring something (hon.)
to thank
to be OK, to be good
to wait
to be long
to be black
to have a haircut
to be all done
to trim
to look heavy
to be same
to layer
to like
to be many
to dry
to fit, to set, to adjust
to wash hair
to change, to switch
to put on
to be soft
to look soft

to be damaged
to take care
to work hard
to sit

to know
알아서 하다  
al-a-seo ha-da  
to do (what someone thinks is) right

없다  
op-da  
to not exist

염색하다  
yeom-sae-ka-da  
to dye

자라다  
ja-ra-da  
to grow

자르다 ja-reu-da  
to have cut, to cut

잘라 드리다 jai-la deu-ri-da  
to cut something for someone (hon.)

참다 jjalp-da  
to be short

 찾아 오다 chaj-a o-da  
to come to see

커트 하다 keo-teu-ha-da  
to have a haircut

파마 하다 pa-ma-ha-da  
to have a perm

Adverbs / Conjunctions

그냥 geu-nyang  
just

그런데 geu-reon-de  
by the way

그렇게 geu-reo-ke  
like that

그리고 geu-ri-go  
and

너무 neo-mu  
too

다음에 da-eum-e  
next time

빨리 ppal-li  
fast

알아서 al-a-seo  
as (someone thinks is)

어때세요? eo-tteo-se-yo  
right/good

어떻게 co-tteo-ke  
How is it?

어서 co-seo  
how/somewhow

어울리게 co-ul-li-ge  
quickly, please

어휴.... eo-hyu  
match well

언제 eon-je  
wow....

얼마나 eol-ma-na  
when/sometime

예쁘게 ye-ppeu-ge  
how long/much/many

잘 jal  
pretty, beautifully

잠깐만 jam-kkan-man  
well

for a minute

Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons

잠시 후 jam-si hu  
after a while

제가 보기에 je-ga bo-gi-e-neun  
in my point of view

조금 jo-geum  
a little

잘게 jjalp-ge  
short, shortly

훨씬 hwol-ssin  
much more
### Grammar

#### (1) Causative Verbs

A causative verb is used when one thing or person *causes* another person or thing to do something. They are derived from more general verbs, using one of seven suffixes. These are ~어 (i), ~히 (hi), ~리 (li), ~기 (gi), ~우 (u), ~구 (gu), and ~추 (chu). One must memorize the verbs that can become causatives and the corresponding suffixes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Causative Derivation</th>
<th>Sample Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹이다</td>
<td>염마가 아기한테 우유를 먹어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meok-da</td>
<td>meog-i-da</td>
<td>eom-ma-ga a-gi-han-te yu-ryeul meog-yeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to eat</td>
<td>to feed someone</td>
<td>Mom is feeding the baby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽다</td>
<td>죽이다</td>
<td>제가 파리를 죽였어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juk-da</td>
<td>jug-i-da</td>
<td>je-ga pa-ri-yeul jug-yeoss-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to die</td>
<td>to kill</td>
<td>I killed the fly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끼다</td>
<td>끼이다</td>
<td>라면을 먹으려고 음을 씹어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kkeul-ta</td>
<td>kkeul-i-da</td>
<td>ra-myeon-eul meog-eu-ryeo-go mul-eul kkeul-yeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to boil</td>
<td>to boil something</td>
<td>I'm boiling water to cook ramen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입다</td>
<td>입히다</td>
<td>염마가 아기한테 음을 입혀요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip-da</td>
<td>i-pi-da</td>
<td>eom-ma-ga a-gi-han-te os-eul i-pyeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to wear</td>
<td>to dress someone</td>
<td>Mom is dressing the baby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>놀다</td>
<td>놀히다</td>
<td>염마가 아기를 착대에 놀혀요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nup-da</td>
<td>nu-pi-da</td>
<td>eom-ma-ga a-gi-reul chim-dae-e nu-pyeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to lie down</td>
<td>to lay someone down</td>
<td>Mom is laying the baby down on the bed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맛다</td>
<td>맛히다</td>
<td>염마가 아기를 의자에 맛혀요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an-tta</td>
<td>an-chi-da</td>
<td>eom-ma-ga a-gi-reul ui-ja-c an-chyeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sit</td>
<td>to seat someone</td>
<td>Mom is seating the baby on the chair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올다</td>
<td>올리다</td>
<td>형이 동생을 올려요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ul-da</td>
<td>ul-li-da</td>
<td>hyeong-i dong-saeng-eul ul-lyeo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to cry</td>
<td>to make someone cry</td>
<td>The older brother makes his younger sibling cry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼마나</td>
<td>얼마나</td>
<td>물을 얼려서 얼음을 만들어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eol-da</td>
<td>eol-li-da</td>
<td>mul-eul eol-lyeo-seo eol-eum-eul man-deul-eo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to freeze</td>
<td>to freeze something</td>
<td>You can freeze water to make ice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벗다</td>
<td>벗키다</td>
<td>염마가 아기 옷을 벗겨요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beot-da</td>
<td>beot-gi-da</td>
<td>eom-ma-ga a-gi os-eul beot-geo-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to take off</td>
<td>to undress someone</td>
<td>Mom is undressing the baby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Verb</td>
<td>Descriptive Verb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to laugh</td>
<td>to make someone laugh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The older brother makes his younger sibling laugh.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to wear</td>
<td>to put shoes on someone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mom is putting shoes on the baby.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sleep</td>
<td>to make someone sleep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mom is putting the baby to sleep on the bed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to burn</td>
<td>to burn something</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I burned the fish by mistake.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to wake</td>
<td>to wake someone up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mom is waking up the baby in the morning.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The pattern ~(으)ㄴ/는/(으)ㄹ 것 같다 ((eu)n/neun/(eu)l geot gat-da) conveys that something seems or looks like something else. It is common to use this pattern as an indirect, polite expression even when the similarity is obvious.
Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons

Present: ~(으)는 것 같다
neun geot gat-da
it seems he is sleeping

Future: ~(으)는 것 같다
(eu)l geot gat-da
it seems he is going to sleep

One only uses ~(으)는 것 같다 after a noun, e.g.

지난 영화관 같아요.
(jo-qi-ga yeong-hwa-gwan gat-a-yo)
It looks that one over there is a movie theater.

저분이 김선생님 같아요.
(jo-bun-i gim-seong-saeng-nim gat-a-yo)
That person looks like Mr. Kim.

(3) Sentence Conjunctions and Clause Connectives

Sentence conjunctions and clause connectives share a close relationship, as detailed below.

그리고 and 아파트가 조용해요. 그리고 깨끗해요.
geu-ri-go a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo geu-ri-go kkae-kkeu-tae-yo

그래서 so 아파트가 열어요. 그래서 버스 타고 와요.
geu-rae-seo a-pa-teu-ga meol-eo-yo geu-rae-seo beo-seu ta-go wa-yo

그런데 but 아파트가 조용해요. 그런데 안 깨끗해요.
geu-reon-de a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo geu-reon-de an kkae-kkeu-tae-yo

그럼지만 but 아파트가 조용해요. 그럼지만 안 깨끗해요.
geu-reo-chi-man a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo geu-reo-chi-man an kkae-kkeu-tae-yo

Grammar Notes

and

아파트가 조용하고 깨끗해요.
a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo kkae-kkeu-tae-yo
The apartment is quiet and clean.

그래서 so 아파트가 열어요. 그래서 버스 타고 와요.
geu-rae-seo a-pa-teu-ga meol-eo-yo geu-rae-seo beo-seu ta-go wa-yo
아파트가 열어서 버스(를) 타고 와요.
a-pa-teu-ga meol-eo-yo beo-seu ta-go wa-yo
The apartment is far so I took the bus.

그런데 but 아파트가 조용해요. 그런데 안 깨끗해요.
geu-reon-de a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo geu-reon-de an kkae-kkeu-tae-yo
아파트가 조용한데 안 깨끗해요.
a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo an kkae-kkeu-tae-yo
The apartment is quiet but not clean.

그럼지만 but 아파트가 조용해요. 그럼지만 안 깨끗해요.
geu-reo-chi-man a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo geu-reo-chi-man an kkae-kkeu-tae-yo
아파트가 조용하지만 안 깨끗해요.
a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-hae-yo geu-reo-chi-man an kkae-kkeu-tae-yo
The apartment is quiet. However, it is not clean.
(4) "To make or have someone or something...": ~게 하다

The pattern ~게 하다 indicates that a person is deliberately putting someone or something in a new situation or making someone do something, e.g.

선생님이 학생들을 공부하게 했어요.
seon-saeng-nim-i hak-saeng-deul-eul gong-bu-ha-ge haess-co-yo.
The teacher made the students study.

The pattern ~게 하세요 (ge hae ju-se-yo) frames this sort of statement as a polite request. Examples:

머리의 아랫쪽이 무거워 보이세요.
(meo-ri-ga neo-mu mu-geo-wo bo-yeo-yo.)
The hair looks too heavy.

아파 보이세요.
(a-pa bo-yeo-yo.)
You look sick.

(5) "Someone or something appears or looks...": ~아/어 보이다 (a/e obo-i-da)

The pattern of adescriptive verb followed by the ending ~아/어 보이다는 used to state an opinion about the appearance of somebody or something. It literally means a person or object appears or looks like something. The speaker does not claim that the statement is objectively true.

머리가 너무 무거워 보이네.
(meo-ri-ga neo-mu mu-geo-wo bo-yeo-yo.)
The hair looks too heavy.

아파 보이네.
(a-pa bo-yeo-yo.)
You look sick.

(6) 아무 Noun (0) 라 (a-mu ...(i)-na) “any Noun”

The word 아무, followed by a noun (0)라 means “any [noun].” It indicates that no matter what the noun is, it makes no difference. When the noun refers to a person, it is usually omitted, as in 아무나 (a-mu-na) “anyone.” Some useful expressions: 아무거나 (a-mu geo-na) “whatever it may be” or "anything," 아무 데나 (a-mu de-na) “wherever” or “anywhere,” and 아무 때나 (a-mu ttae-na) “whenever” or “anytime.”
**Further Study**

**Style**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Transliteration</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>짧은 머리 jjalb-eun meo-ri</td>
<td>short hair</td>
<td>short hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>긴 머리 gin meo-ri</td>
<td>long hair</td>
<td>long hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가는 머리 ga-neun meo-ri</td>
<td>thin hair</td>
<td>thin hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>굵은 머리 gulg-eun meo-ri</td>
<td>thick hair</td>
<td>thick hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곱슬머리 gop-secul meo-ri</td>
<td>curly hair</td>
<td>curly hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>짧았던 머리 ppeot-ppćeot-tan meo-ri</td>
<td>thick hair</td>
<td>thick hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부드러운 머리 bu-deu-reoun meo-ri</td>
<td>soft hair</td>
<td>soft hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대머리 dae-meo-ri</td>
<td>bald</td>
<td>bald</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Transliteration</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>파마머리 pa-ma meo-ri</td>
<td>permanent-wave hair</td>
<td>permanent-wave hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단발머리 dan-bal meo-ri</td>
<td>shoulder-length hair</td>
<td>shoulder-length hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스트레이트 파마 seu-teu-re-i-teu pa-ma</td>
<td>hair straightening</td>
<td>hair straightening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>굵은 파마 gulg-eun pa-ma</td>
<td>perm with large rolls</td>
<td>perm with large rolls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Transliteration</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이용사 mi-yong-sa,</td>
<td>woman's hairdresser</td>
<td>woman's hairdresser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>해어 디자이너 he-eo di-ja-i-neo</td>
<td>man's hairdresser</td>
<td>man's hairdresser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이발사 i-bal-ssa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Transliteration</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>머리를 깎다 meo-ri-reul gam-tta</td>
<td>to shampoo</td>
<td>to have a haircut (for men)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리를 깎다 meo-ri-reul kkak-da</td>
<td>to trim hair</td>
<td>to have a toweldry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리를 다듬다 meo-ri-reul da-deum-tta</td>
<td>to trim hair</td>
<td>to have a toweldry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리를 알리다 meo-ri-reul mal-li-da</td>
<td>to brush hair</td>
<td>to have a haircut (for women)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리를 빗다 meo-ri-reul bit-da</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리를 자르다 meo-ri-reul ja-reu-da</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lesson 9: Barbershops & Beauty Salons**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Transliteration</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>머리를 행구다 meo-ri-reul heng-gu-da</td>
<td>to rinse, to wash</td>
<td>to rinse, to wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드라이하다 deu-ra-i-ha-da</td>
<td>to have a blow-dry</td>
<td>to have a blow-dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>린스 하다 rin-seu ha-da</td>
<td>to rinse out, to wash</td>
<td>to rinse out, to wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>우스/젤 mae-ppc-seo-li-reul ba-reu-da</td>
<td>to put on hair</td>
<td>to put on hair mousse/gel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→ 젤을 바르다 seu-ppc-seo-li-reul ba-reu-da</td>
<td>to put on hair</td>
<td>to put on hair mousse/gel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>샴푸하다 syam-pu-ha-da</td>
<td>to shampoo</td>
<td>to shampoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스프레이를 하다</td>
<td>to put on hair spray</td>
<td>to put on hair spray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→ 스프레이를 뿌리다 seu-ppc-seo-li-reul ha-da</td>
<td>to put on hair</td>
<td>to put on hair spray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>염색하다 yeom-sae-ka-da</td>
<td>to dye/tint</td>
<td>to dye/tint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파마하다 pa-ma-ha-da</td>
<td>to have a</td>
<td>to have a permanent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Reservations are not required for a barbershop or beauty salon. Even without a reservation one will be quickly served. While waiting, some shops provide one with tea or a soft drink free of charge. Only men go to barbershops, with more expensive places providing shaves and a massage in addition to haircuts. There are both male and female barbers. Hair salons have traditionally been used only by women, but now younger men also go there for haircuts, permanents, and other services. An older man will usually go to a barbershop. Younger men prefer hair salons to barbershops since haircuts at salons are more stylish. Tipping in either place is not required. Permanents are very popular with women of all ages, and having some or all of one’s hair tinted is not uncommon. Hair fashions change rapidly in Korea, and these changes are quite noticeable as fashion is important to a large portion of the population.

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

   (1) 어서 오세요. 어느 분 찾아 오셨어요?
   eo-seo o-se-yo. eo-neu bun chaj-a o-syeoss-eo-yo?
   (2) 기다리시는 동안 뭐 마실 것 좀 없다. 드릴까요?
   gi-da-ri-si-neun dong-an mwo ma-sil kkeot jom gat-da deu-ril-kka-yo?
   (3) 머리 아츰케 해 드릴까요?
   meo-ri eo-teeo-ke hae deu-ril-kka-yo?
   (4) 머리가 많이 기네요. 언제 머리 자르겠어요?
   meo-ri-ga man-i gi-ne-yo. eon-je meo-ri ja-reu-syeoss-eo-yo?
   (5) 다 됐습니다. 어디세요? 마음에 드세요?
   da dwaet-seum-ni-da eo-tteo-se-yo? ma-eum-e deu-se-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English:

   (1) 기다리시는 동안 이 장치 좀 보시겠어요?
   gi-da-ri-si-neun dong-an i jap-ji jom bo-si-gess-eo-yo?
   (2) 머리 슬이 많아서 레이어가 없으면 좀 담담해 보일 것입니다.
   (3) 머리 색깔이 너무 깔백이기 안색 한번 해 보세요.
   meo-ri saek-kkal-i neo-nu kka-ma-ni-kka yoom saek han-beon hae bo-se-yo.
   (4) 머리 모양은 바꾸지 마시고 그냥 잘게 좀 다듬어 주세요.
   meo-ri mo-yang-eun ba-kku-ji ma-si-go geu-nyang jjalp-ge jom da-deum-eo ju-se-yo.
   (5) 머리가 남들보다 빨리 자라나봐요.
3. Please fill in the blanks with appropriate causative verbs:

(1) 실수로 생선을 (타다: ). sil-su-ro saeng-seon-eul
tae-woss-eo-yo
(2) 라면을 얻으려고 물을 (끌다: ). ra-nyeon-eul meog-
eu-ryeo-go mul-eul kkeul-yeo-yo
(3) 형이 동생을 (물다: ). hyeong-i dong-saeng-eul
ul-lyeo-yeo
(4) 엄마가 아기 옷을 (ственные: ). com-ma-ga a-gi os-eul
beot-geo-yeo
(5) 엄마가 아기한테 옷을 (입다: ). com-ma-ga a-gi-han-
te os-eul i-pyeo-yeo
(6) 의자가 너무 높으니까 조금 (놋다: ).
ui-ja-ga neo-mu nop-eu-ni-ka jo-geum nat-chwo ju-se-yo
(7) 엄마가 아기를 침대에 (자다: ). com-ma-ga a-gi-reul
chim-dae-e jae-wo-yo

4. Please fill in the blanks with the appropriate conjunction.

(그렇지만, 그럼, 그러면 (그럼), 그리고, 그래서)

A: 어디 가세요?
B: 내일이 여자친구 생일이에요. (1) _ 선물 사러 백화
점에 가요.
A: 그러면? (2) _ 지난 주말에 는 어떻게 지내셨어요?
B: 도요일에는 친구하고 영화를 봤어요. (3) _ 일요
일에는 교회에 갔어요.
A: 아, 그러면요? (4) _ 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?
B: 요즘은 일이 좀 적어요. (5) _ 좀 한가해요.
A: 그러면? (6) _ 시간 있으십니까 저하고 같이 테니
스 차실래요?
B: 좋지요. (7) _ 요즘은 제가 움직이 별로 안 줄으니까 다
음 주가 좋겠습니다요.
Lesson 10: Transportation
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

Lesson 10: Transportation

표현 Patterns

어디까지 가실까요?
eo-di-kka-ji ga-sim-ni-kka?
Where would you like to go?

To the college's street, please.

죄송하지만 항승 중 해도 되겠습니까?
joe-song-ha-ji-man hap-seung jom hae-do doe-get-seum-ni-kka?
I'm sorry, but would it be OK if I take another passenger?

길이 많아 막히네요.
gil-i man-i ma-ki-ne-yo.
All the roads are congested.

서울 시내는 언제나 이래요.
seo-ul si-nae-neun eon-je-na i-rae-yo.
This is quite typical on the streets in Seoul. (lit. In downtown Seoul, the traffic is always just like this.)

그래도 주중이 주말보다 좀 낮지 않아요?
geu-rae-do ju-jung-i ju-mal-bo-da jom nat-ji an-a-yo?
But don't you think traffic is a lot smoother during weekdays than on the weekends?

큰일 냈어요. 약속시간에 늦었는데...
keun-il nan-ne-yo. yak-sok-si-gan-e neuj-eon-neun-de...
I have a problem (lit. I am in trouble.) I am late for a meeting...

거의 다 왔는데 어디 세워 드릴까요?
geo-i da wan-neun-de co-di se-wo deu-ril-kka-yo?
(We are) almost there, and where can I drop you off?

Lesson 10: Transportation

저기 육교 밑에 세워 주세요.
jeo-gi yuk-gyo mit-e se-wo ju-se-yo.
Please drop me off under the overpass over there.

요금은 9,600원 남았습니다.
The fare comes out to 9600 won.

여기 10,000원이요. 잔돈은 그냥 가지세요.
yeo-gi man-won-i-yo. jan-don-eun geu-nyang ga-ji-se-yo.
Here is 10,000 won. Please keep the change.

여관하고 비행기표 좀 주시겠습니까?
yeo-kkwon-ha-go bi-haeng-gi-pyo jom ju-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
May I have your passport and plane ticket?

여기 있습니다.
yeo-gi it-seum-ni-da.
Here they are.

짐은 몇 개나 부치실 걸니까?
jim-eun myeot gae-na bu-chi-sil kkeom-ni-kka?
How many pieces of luggage will you being taking (lit. shipping)?

두 개요. 그리고 이건 가지고 타도 되죠?
du-gae-yo. geu-ri-go i-geon ga-jy jo ta-do doe-jyo?
Just two. And I can take this one on board with me, right?

두 개까지 가능합니다.
You may take up to two pieces of luggage with you. (lit. Up to two, it's OK.)
jwa-seog-eun eo-neu jjog-eu-ro deu-ri-lkka-yo?
With the seat, which side do you prefer? (lit. Which side of seat should I give you?)

jhak youm roo jwe-yeo.
A window seat, please.

hok-si deo pil-yo-ha-sin ge iss-eu-sim-ni-kka?
Is there anything more I can do for you? (lit. Are there any more things you need?)

i ka-deu-e ma-il-li-ji jom neo-eo ju-si-gess-eo-yo?
Can you please add my mileage (for this flight) onto this card?

i-ri ju-sip-si-o.
May I have your card, please? (lit. Please give it to me.)

yeeo-gi son-nim yeo-kkwon-ha-go bo-ding-pae-sseu it-seum-ni-da.
Here are your passport and boarding pass.

The gate number is 38 and your seat number is 27A.

joeul-jeun jweong geol-lyeo-yo.
Have a pleasant flight.

Lesson 10: Transportation

Please give me two tickets for the train that departs at 12:30 to Pusan.

Two tickets. That comes to 20,000 won.

If the train leaves at 12:30, what time will it arrive in Pusan?

bo-tong 5-si-gan jeong geol-
It usually takes about 5 hours.

gi cha ta-neun de ga eo-di-jyo?
Where can I go to board the train? (lit. Where is the place to board the train?)

jeo-gi geon-neo-jeon cheot-geun-jjae peul-laet-pom-e bu-san-haeng-i-ra-go sseo it ji-yo?
You see the first platform across the track where a sign says “To Pusan,” right?

geu-jhong-e ga-seo gi-ri-se-yo.
Please go there and wait.
Do I have to change trains, or would this train take me directly there? (lit. Would I have to transfer trains or would this train go there directly?)

This train will take you directly there, so you will not need to change trains. (lit. Since this train goes there directly, you don’t need to transfer.)

대화 Model Conversations

(1) 택시 타기  

gi:  어디까지 가십시오?

eo-di-kka-ji ga-sim-ni-kka?

이정호:  대학로까지 좀 부탁합니다.

기사:  알겠습니다. 그런 데 좌석하지마니 할당 좀 해도 되겠습니까?

al-get-seum-ni-da. geum-reon-de jee-song-ja-ji-man

이정호:  네, 괜찮아요. 그래세요. 그런데 길이 많이 약히네요.

pc, gwaen-chan-a-yo. geum-reo-se-yo. geum-reon-de gil-i

기사:  서울 시내는 언제나 이래요. 그래도 주중이 주말보다 좀 낮지 않아요?

seo-ul si-nae-neun eon-je-na i-rae-yo. geum-rae-do

이정호:  큰일 납니다. 약속시간에 늦었는데...

keun-il nan-ne-yo. yak-sok-si-gan-e neuj-eon-neun-de.

기사:  (잠시 후) 거의 다 왔는데 어디 세워 드릴까요?

(jam-si hu) geo-ui da wan-neun-de co-di se-wo

deu-ril-kka-yo?

이정호:  저기 육교 앞에 세워 주세요.
jee-gi yuk-gyo mit-e se-wo ju-sc-yo.

기사:  요금은 9,600원 나왔습니다.
yo-geum-eun gu-cheon-yuk-baeg-won

이정호:  여기 10,000원이요. 잔돈은 그날 가지세요.
yeo-gi man-won-i-yo. jan-don-eun geu-nyang ga-ji-se-yo.
기사: 고맙습니다. 안녕히 가세요.
go-map-seum-ni-da. an-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo.

(2) 비행기 타기 bi-haeng-gi ta-gi
이정호: 여기 있습니다.
yeo-gi iss-eum-ni-da.
직원: 몇 개 있어 부지실 갈니까?
jim-eun myeot gae-na bu-chi-sil kkeom-ni-kka?
이정호: 두 개요. 그리고 이건 가지고 타도 되요?
du-gae-yo. geu-ri-go i-geon ga-ji-go ta-do doe-jyo?
직원: 네. 두 개까지 맘찮습니다. 좌석은 어느 쪽으로 드릴까요?
ne. du-gae-kka-ji gwaen-chan-seum-ni-da. jwa-seog-eun eo-neu jhog-eu-ro deu-riit-kka-yo?
이정호: 창측으로 주세요.
chang-cheug-eu-ro ju-se-yo.
직원: 혹시 더 필요한게 있으실니까?
hok-si deo pil-yo-han ge iss-eu-sim-ni-kka?
이정호: 이 가드에 마일리지 좀 넣어 주시겠어요?
i ka-deu-e ma-il-li-ji jom neo-eo ju-si-gess-eo-yo?
직원: 네, 여기 주십시오. (잠시 후) 여기 손님 여권하고 보딩 패스 있습니다.
ne, i-ri ju-sip-si-o. (jam-si hu) yeo-gi son-nim yeok-kkwon-ha-go bo-ing-pae-sseu it-seum-ni-da.
게이트는 38번이고 좌석번호는 27A입니다. 줄거운 여행 되십시오.

이정호: 감사합니다.
gam-sa-ham-ni-da.

(3) 기차/고속버스 타기gi-cha/go-sok-ppeo-sseu ta-gi
이정호: 부산행12시 30분 두 장만 주세요.
직원: 두 장이요. 20,000원입니다.
du-jang-i-yo. i-man-won-im-ni-da.
이정호: 12시 30분에 출발하면 몇 시에 부산에 도착하나요?
직원: 보통 5시간 정도 걸리요.
이정호: 그래서 기차 타는 데가 어디죠?
geu-reon-de gi-cha ta-neun de-ga eo-di-jyo?
직원: 자기 건너편 첫 번째 플랫폼에 부산행이라고 써 있지요? 그 쪽에 가서 기다리세요.
이정호: 중간에 기차를 갈아타야 되나요, 아니면 바로 가나요?
jung-gan-e gi-cha-reul gal-a-ta-ya doe-na-yo, a-ni-myeon ba-ro ga-na-yo?
직원: 직행이나 갈아타지 않으셔도 돼요.
ji-kaeng-i-ni-kka gal-a-ta-ji an-eu-syeo-do dwae-yo.
Lesson 10: Transportation

Employee: Sure. May I have your card please? (after a while)
Here are your passport and boarding pass. The gate number is 38 and your seat number is 27A. Hope you have a pleasant flight.
Lee: Thank you.

(3) Riding a train/express bus

Lee: May I get two tickets for the train that departs at 12:30 to Pusan?
Employee: Two tickets. That comes to 20,000 won.
Lee: If the train leaves at 12:30, what time should I expect to arrive in Pusan?
Employee: It usually takes about 5 hours.
Lee: By the way, where do I go to board the train?
Employee: Do you see the first platform across the track where a sign says “To Pusan”? Please go there and wait.
Lee: Do I have to make a change trains, or does this train take me directly to Pusan?
Employee: This train will take you directly to Pusan, so you will not need to change trains.
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

Lesson 10: Transportation

여취 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

건너편  geon-neo-pyeon
계이 ge-i-teu
고속버스  go-sok-beo-seu
그쪽  geu jiook
기사  gi-sa
기차  gi-chu
길  gil
대학로  dae-hang-no
두 개  du-gae
두 장  du-jang
마을리지  ma-il-li-ji
몇 개  myeot-gae
몇 시  myeot-si
일  mit
보딩패스  bo-ding-pae-sseu
부산 bu-san
부산행 bu-san-haeng
비행기  bi-haeng-gi
비행기표  bi-haeng-gi-pyo
서울  seo-ul
손님  son-nim
시내  si-nae
약속시간  yak-sok-si-gan
어느 쪽  eo-neu jiook
어디  eo-di
여권  yeo-kk won
여기  yeo-gi
여행  yeo-haeng
요금  yo-geum
육교  yuk-gyo

across the street
gate
express bus
that side
driver
train
street, road
university street
two items
two sheets of paper
mileage
how many items?
what time?
under, beneath
boarding pass
Pusan
going to Pusan
airplane
airplane ticket
Seoul
guest, visitor, customer
downtown
appointment time
which way?
where?
passport
here
travel
fare
over pass

Verbs

가다  ga-da
가지고 타다  ga-ji-go ta-da
가져다  ga-ji-da
갈아타다  gal-a-ta-da
갈리다  geol-li-da
간절다  gwaen-chan-ta
그러다  geu-geo-da

to go
to ride having something
to have
to transfer
to take time
to be OK
to do so
Lesson 10: Transportation

296
BEGINNER’S KOREAN

가다 다 gi-da-ri-da
나다 na-o-da
날다 nat-da
널어 주다 neo-eo ju-da

 renovation to wait
to come out
to be better
to be blocked, to be jammed
to go directly
to send
to request
to stop
to be written
to know
to be sorry
to give
to be happy
to depart
to have a problem, to have trouble
to ride
to share a ride

Adverbs / Conjunctions

 거의 geo-ui
 그냥 geu-nyang
 그래도 geu-rae-do
 보통 bo-tong

 almost
 just
 although, even though
 in general
(I) **Ordinal Numbers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Native ordinal numbers</th>
<th>Sino-Korean ordinal numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>첫째 cheot-jjae, 첫 번째 cheot-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제일회 je-il-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두번째 dul-ji-ae, 두 번째 du-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제이회 je-i-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세번째 set-ji-ae, 세 번째 se-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제삼회 je-sam-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>넷째 네 번째 ne-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제사 회 je-sa-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯째 da-seot-ji-ae, 다섯 번째 da-seot-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제오회 je-o-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여섯째 yeo-seot-ji-ae, 여섯 번째 yeo-seot-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제육회 je-yu-koe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일곱째 il-gop-ji-ae, 일곱 번째 il-gop-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제칠회 je-chil-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟째 yeo-deol-ji-ae, 여덟 번째 yeo-deol-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제팔회 je-pal-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아홉째 a-hop-ji-ae, 아홉 번째 a-hop-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제구회 je-gu-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열째 yeol-jjae, 열 번째 yeol-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십회 je-si-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열한째 yeol-han-ji-ae, 열 번째 yeol-han-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십일회 je-si-bil-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엇두 번째 yeol-ttu-ji-ae, 엇두 번째 yeol-ttu-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-ii-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엇넷 번째 yeol-sse-ji-ae, 엇넷 번째 yeol-sse-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십삼회 je-si-sam-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엇넷 번째 yeol-le-ji-ae, 엇넷 번째 yeol-le-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십삼회 je-si-sam-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엇단섯 번째 yeol-ma-seot-ji-ae, 엇단섯 번째 yeol-ma-seot-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십오회 je-si-nyo-koe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엇여섯 번째 yeol-lyeo-seot-ji-ae, 엇여섯 번째 yeol-lyeo-seot-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십오회 je-si-nyo-koe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엇일곱 번째 yeol-nil-gop-ji-ae, 엇일곱 번째 yeol-nil-gop-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십칠회 je-si-chil-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엇여덟 번째 yeol-nil-deol-p cone-ji-ae, 엇여덟 번째 yeol-nil-deol-p cone-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십팔회 je-si-pal-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엇아홉 번째 yeol-a-hop-ji-ae, 엇아홉 번째 yeol-a-hop-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십구회 je-si-gu-hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무 번째 seu-nu-ji-ae, 스무 번째 seu-nu-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물 번째 seu-mul-ji-ae, 스물 번째 seu-mul-beon-jjae</td>
<td>제십이회 je-si-i-poe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) **Compound Sentences:**  

The ending ～아/어서 (a/ eo-seo) vs. ～고 (go)

The ending ～아/어서 is used to connect two action or event clauses describing an action or event. The clauses are in chronological order, with the first always a precondition or cause of the second. The verb in the first clause cannot use the past tense, and the subject of the two clauses must be the same.

친구를 만나서 영화를 봤어요.

chin-gu-reul man-na-seo yeong-hwa-reul bwass-eo-yo.

I met my friend and then we went to see a movie.

When listing unrelated events, the ending ～고 is used. For example:

친구를 만나고 영화를 봤어요.

chin-gu-reul man-na-go yeong-hwa-reul bwass-eo-yo.

I met my friend, and I went to see a movie.

(3) **State of Being:** ～이/여 있다 (a/ eo it-da)

The pattern ～이/여 있다 means “in the state of being.” It describes the continuation of a state after a result has been had. The focus is on the current state and not on the action that led to the result. Examples:

상자 안에 사과가 들어 있다.

sang-ja an-e sa-gwa-ga deul-eo it-da.

Apples are in the box.

정호는 한국에 가 있어요.

jeong-ho-neun han-gug-e ga iss-eo-yo.

Jung-Ho is in Korea.
The use of this ending contrasts with the use of ~고 있다, which indicates that a person or thing is in the midst of a process, e.g. 정호는 지금 한국에 가고 있어요. (jeong-ho-neun ji-geum han-gug-e ga-go iss-eo-yo) “Jeong-Ho is now going to Korea.”

(4) Background Information: ~(있/있)는데 ((at/eot)-neun-de)

To supply background information about the situation in the main clause, the ending ~는데 is used. It occurs in the following circumstances: when the speaker and listener are sharing information; when two clauses are contrasted; and when a request or proposal is justified. There are alternative forms. The ending ~는데 is used with an active verb stem ending in /-는, or ~있/있. The ending ~(있)는데 is used with a descriptive verb stem. With a copula stem, the ending ~는데 is used. In the past tense, ~있/있 is placed before ~는데.

(5) Expressing Surprise, Admiration, or Sympathy: ~네요 (ne-yo)

The ending ~네요 indicates an exclamation. It is heard when the speaker hears something that contradicts their knowledge of a matter. The ending may be used in any tense, but it must always occur in a declarative sentence. It differs from the ending ~아/어요, which indicates a neutral reaction.

(6) Rhetorical Questions: ~(지) 않아요? (ji an-a-yo?)

The long form of the negative, or ~(지) 않아요?, can be used as a rhetorical question. Using a negative question is a more polite way of stating a belief or an opinion. If the listener agrees, the response begins with 네 (ne), as in this exchange:

네, 정말 그래요.
ne, jeong-mal geu-ron-ne-yo.
Yes, it really is.

The words 맞아요 (maj-a-yo) and 그래요 (geu-rae-yo) may also be used to begin the sentence.

If the listener disagrees with the speaker, the appropriate response is 아니요 (a-ni-o). If the listener is uncertain, he or she responds with 글쎄요 (geul-sse-yo).

요즘 날씨가 정말 춥지 않아요?
yo-jeum nal-ssi-ga jeong-mal chup-ji an-a-yo?
Isn’t the weather these days really cold?
 referencia Further Study

(1) Means of Transportation

고속버스 go-sok-ppeo-seu
기차 gi-cha
렌트카 ren-teu-ka
배 bae
버스 beo-seu
비행기 bi-haeng-gi
오토바이 o-to-ba-i
자동차 ja-dong-cha/자가용 ja-ga-yong
자동차 ja-jeon-geo
지하철 ji-ha-cheol
택시 taek-si

express bus
train
rental car
boat, ship
bus
airplane
motorcycle
car (personal)
bike
subway
taxi

on foot, by walking
by running
by driving
by riding (something)
departure
ground transportation
boarding pass
passport
visa
airline ticket
airport
domestic airlines
international airlines

Exiting na-ga-neun got
Walking gal-a-ta-neun got
Left oen-jjok
Right o-reun-jjok

교통신호통 sin-ho-deung
횡단보도 hoeng-dan-bo-do
교통 yuk-gyo
지하도 ji-ha-do
사거리 sa-geo-ri

지역하다 jik-jin-ha-da
택시타기 ttok-ba-ro ga-da
도돌아 가다 doe-dol-a ga-da
좌회전하다 jwa-hoe-jeon-ha-da
우회전하다 u-hoe-jeon-ha-da
오른쪽으로 가다 o-reun-jjog-eu-ro ga-da
무단횡단을 하다 mu-dan hoeng-dan-eul ha-da

express bus
train
rental car
boat, ship
bus
airplane
motorcycle
car (personal)
bike
subway
taxi

on foot, by walking
by running
by driving
by riding (something)
departure
ground transportation
boarding pass
passport
visa
airline ticket
airport
domestic airlines
international airlines

Exiting na-ga-neun got
Walking gal-a-ta-neun got
Left oen-jjok
Right o-reun-jjok

traffic signal
crosswalk
overpass
underpass
four-way intersection

ambulance
ambulance
fire department
fire truck
police
police department
Traveling in Korea

When traveling in Korea, public transportation has many advantages. Street signs are inadequate in most places and Seoul has heavy traffic almost all day long. Using the subway is the most time-efficient way of traveling. Tickets can be purchased at either vending machines or ticket windows. The city bus routes are difficult to understand if one is not familiar with them. One may call in advance for taxi service, but most people simply hail them when they pass by.

Though officially discouraged, ride-sharing in taxis (합승 hap-seung) is very common during peak hours. Taxi drivers stop several times to pick up additional passengers, and each party pays a separate fare. Tipping is not required, but, since many passengers dislike waiting for small change, they will often tell the driver to keep the balance of the payment.

Trains and express buses are the most common way of traveling between regions. One may use a car, but under normal traffic conditions, it takes about five hours to get from Seoul to Pusan, which is longer than most people care to drive. On the trains and buses, one is generally issued a one-way ticket, with a return ticket being purchased after arriving at one’s destination.

When driving, beware of people jaywalking. It is very common in the cities. When stopping at a gas station, remember that most stations will pump your gas for you; self-service is very rare. Tipping is not required at the station, and the posted price for gas is by the liter.

연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 어디까지 가실니까?
   jo-e-si-gi-da-si-ni-kka?
(2) 좌석하시지만 합승 줄 해도 되겠습니다니까?
   :joo-song-ha-ji-man hap-seung jom hae-do doe-get-seum-ni-kka?
(3) 계의 다 왔는데 어디 세워 드릴까요?
   geo-i da wan-neun-de eo-di se-wo deu-ril-kka-yo?
(4) 점은 몇 개나 부치실 걸니까?
   jim-eun meu-eul myeot gae-na bu-chi-sil kkeom-ni-kka?
(5) 좌석은 어느 쪽으로 드릴까요?
   jwa-seog-eun eo-neu jjog-eu-ro deu-ril-kka-yo?
(6) 계의 더 필요한 게 있으십니까?
   hok-si deo pil-yo-han ge iss-eum-sim-ni-kka?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 그래도 주중이 주말보다 좀 낮지 않아요?
   geu-rae-do ju-jung-i ju-mal-bo-da jom nat-ji an-a-yo?
(2) 여권하고 비행기표 줄 주시겠습니까?
   yeo-kkwon-ha-go bi-haeng-gi-pyo jom ju-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
(3) 12시에 출발하면 몇시에 부산에 도착하나요?
   yeol-ttu-si-e chul-bal-ha-myeon myeot-si-e bu-san-e do-cha-ka-na-yo?
(4) 직행이니까 기차를 갈아타지 않으셔도 되요.
(5) 게이트는 38번이고 좌석번호는 27A입니다.
   ge-i-teu-neun sam-sip-pal-beon-i-go jwa-seok-beon-ho-neun
   sip-chil-e-i-im-ni-da.
3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) It seems like all the roads are congested.
(2) Where can I go to board the train?
(3) Two tickets for the train departing at 1:00 for Pusan, please.
(4) Please drop me off under the overpass over there.
(5) Please keep the change.

4. Please write five things that you have to do during this week. Make sure to use ordinal numbers.

5. Please write a paragraph describing your experiences with public transportation.

---

Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices
BEGINNER'S KOREAN
Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices

표현 Patterns

통신 만들기.
tong-jang man-deul-gi.
Opening a bank account.

어떻게 도와 드릴까요?
eo-tteo-ke do-wa deu-nil-kka-yo?
How may I help you?

통신을 하나 만들려고 하는데요.
tong-jang-eul ha-na man-deul-lyeo-go ha-neun-de-yo.
I would like to open an account. (lit. I would like to make an account keeping book.)

그리세요? 그럼 신분증하고 도장 좀 주시겠습니까?
geu-reo-se-yo? geu-reom sin-bun-jjeung-ha-go do-jang jom ju-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
Is that so? Then would you give me your ID and signature stamp?

신분증은 여권이면 되죠?
sin-bun-jjeung-eun yeo-kkwon-i-myeon doe-jyo?
My passport can be an ID, right?

그리고 도장은 없는데요.
geu-ri-go do-jang-eun eom-neun-de-yo.
And I don’t have a signature stamp.

랜치아요. 그냥 사인만 하셔도 돼요.
It’s OK. You can just sign.

얼마나 예금하시겠습니까?
eol-ma-na ye-geum-ha-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
How much do you want to deposit?

On this application, please write your name, address, and pin number.

이렇게 쓰면 되나요?
i-reo-ke sseu-myeon doe-na-yo?
Is it OK if I write like this?

네, 됐습니다. 현금카드도 필요하시죠?
ne, dwaet-seum-ni-da. hyeon-geum ka-deu-do pil-yo-ha-si-jj-i-yo?
Yes, it’s done. You need an ATM card too, right?

네, 해 주세요.
ne, hae ju-se-yo.
Yes, please do it for me.

장간만 기다리세요.
Wait a minute, please.

여기 손님 통장하고 현금카드 있습니까.
Here is your balance (lit. account keeping) book and an ATM card.

환전하기
hwan-jeon-ha-gi
exchanging currency

환전을 좀 하고 싶은데요.
hwan-jeon-eul jom ha-go sip-eun-de-yo.
I would like to exchange some money.
What is today's exchange rate?

1300 won per dollar.

How much do you want to exchange?

Just 500 dollars, please.

Would you please fill out the application form here?

Please show me your passport or ID.

Do you want your money in cash or checks?

Please give me everything in checks and only the change in cash.

How long will this take to get to San Diego?

The fastest way, please.

Express mail will take three days, but it's a little expensive. Are you in a hurry?

Not really. Then what do you think is better?
If you send it airmail, it will take about a week.

Then I will take that.

Would you please write the receiver’s name and address here?

Is it OK if I write like this?

Yes, it’s done. Is there anything else I can do for you? (lit. Is there anything more you need?)

Please give me ten 200-won stamps.
종장 만들기 tong-jang man-deul-gi

직원: 어서 오세요, 손님. 어떻게 도와드릴까요?

이정호: 통장을 하나 만들려고 하는데요.

직원: 그래보세요. 그러면 신분증하고 도장을 좀 주시겠습니까?

이정호: 신분증은 어린이면 되죠? 그리고 도장을 얻는데요.

직원: 빨리야요. 그냥 사진만 하셔도 돼요. 얼마나 예금하시겠습니까?

이정호: 30만원이요.

직원: 이 신청서에 손님 성함하고 주소하고 비밀번호 좀 써 주십시오.

이정호: (잠시 후) 이렇게 쓰면 되나요?

직원: (jam-si hú) i-reo-ke sseu-myeeon doe-na-ayo?

이정호: 네, 됩니다. 현금카드도 필요하신가요?

직원: ne dwaet-seum-ni-da. hyeon-geum ka-deu-do pil-yo-ha-si-jyo?

이정호: ne, hae ju-se-yo.

Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices

직원: 잔잔한 거리나세요.... (잠시 후) 여기 손님 등장하고 현금카드 있습니다. 안녕히 가십시오.


(2) 환전하기 hwan-jeon-ha-gi

이정호: 환전을 좀 하고 싶은데요. 오늘 원통이 어때가 되나요?

직원: hwan-heon-eul jom ha-go sip-eun-de-yo. o-neul hwan-nyul-i eo-teo-ke doe-na-ayo?

이정호: 달러당 1300원이에요. 얼마나 바꾸시계요?

직원: dal-leo-dang cheon-sam-baeg-won-i-e-yo. eol-ma-na ba-kku-si-ge-yo?

이정호: 500불만 바꿔 주세요.

직원: o-baek-bul-man ba-kkwo ju-se-yo.

이정호: 여기 있었습니다.

직원: yeo-gi it-seum-ni-da.

이정호: 전돈 원금으로 드릴까요, 아니면 수표로 드릴까요?

직원: don-eun hyeon-geum-eu-ro deu-ril-kka-ayo. a-ni-myeeon su-pyro deu-ril-kka-ayo?

이정호: 전부 수표로 주시고 전돈 현금으로 주세요.


이정호: (잠시 후) 여기 있습니다. 수표로 5,000원 공제하고 드렸습니다. 안녕히 가십시오.


이정호: 감사합니다.

gam-sa-ham-ni-da.
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices

기원: 3일이면 되는데 좀 비싸요. 급하세요?
작문: 속달우편은 3일이면 되는데 좀 비싸요. 급하세요?

기원: 이거 산디에이고까지 얼마나 걸릴까요?
작문: 이거 산디에이고까지 얼마나 걸릴까요?

기원: 제일 빠리 가는 것으로 해 주세요.
작문: 제일 빠리 가는 것으로 해 주세요.


기원: 붙어요. 그럼 어떤 게 좋을까요?
작문: 붙어요. 그럼 어떤 게 좋을까요?

지난 주부터 우편요금이 인상됐기 때문에 이건 230원짜리를 사용해야 되는데요.

기원: 그렇게요? 그럼 230원짜리로 10장 주세요.
작문: 그렇게요? 그럼 230원짜리로 10장 주세요.

지난 주부터 우편요금이 인상됐기 때문에 이건 230원짜리를 사용해야 되는데요.

기원: 그렇게요? 그럼 230원짜리로 10장 주세요.
작문: 그렇게요? 그럼 230원짜리로 10장 주세요.

기원: 이렇게 따로 쓰면 되나요?
작문: 이렇게 따로 쓰면 되나요?

기원: 이렇게 따로 쓰면 되나요?
작문: 이렇게 따로 쓰면 되나요?

기원: 200원짜리 우표 10장을 주세요.
작문: 200원짜리 우표 10장을 주세요.
(1) Opening a bank account

Employee: Welcome, customer. How may I help you?
Lee: I would like to open an account.
Employee: Is that so? Then would you give me your ID and signature stamp?
Lee: My passport can be an ID, right? And I don't have a signature stamp.
Employee: It's OK. You can just sign. How much do you want to deposit?
Lee: 300,000 won, please.
Employee: On this application, please write your name, address, and pin number.
Lee: (after a while) Is it OK if I write like this?
Employee: Yes, it's done. You need an ATM card too, right?
Lee: Yes, please do it for me.
Employee: Wait a minute, please. (after a while) Here are your balance book and ATM card. Good-bye.

(2) Exchanging currency

Lee: I would like to exchange some money. What is today's exchange rate?
Employee: 1300 won per dollar. How much do you want to exchange?
Lee: Just 500 dollars, please.
Employee: Then would you please fill out this application form? And please show me your passport or ID.
Lee: Here it is.
Employee: Do you want your money in cash or checks?
Lee: Please give me everything in checks and only the change in cash.
Employee: (after a while) Here it is. I took out the 5,000-won processing fee and gave it to you the rest. Good-bye.
Lee: Thank you.

(3) Sending mail

Lee: How long will this take to go to San Diego?
Employee: How would you want to send it?
Lee: The fastest way, please.
Employee: Express mail will take three days but it's a little expensive. Are you in a hurry?
Lee: Not really. Then what do you think is better?
Employee: If you send it as airmail, it will take about a week.
Lee: Then I will take that.
Employee: Do you want it sent registered mail?
Lee: No, that's OK.
Employee: Would you please write the receiver's name and address here?
Lee: (after a while) Is this OK?
Employee: Yes, that's good. Is there anything else I can do for you?
Lee: Please give me ten 200-won stamps.
Employee: Because of the price increase last week, you will probably need to use 230-won stamps now.
Lee: Really? Then ten 230-won stamps, please.
BEGINNER’S KOREAN

Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices

여러 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns

도장 do-jang
돈 don
등기우편 deung-gi-ŭ-ŭ-yeon
우 mwo
받으실 분 bad-ŭ-ŭ-sil bun
비밀번호 bi-nil-ŭ-ŏn-ho

사인 sa-in
성함 seong-ham
속달우편 sok-dal-ŭ-ŭ-yeon
손님 son-nim
수수료 su-su-ryo
수표 supyo
신분증 sin-bun-ji-eung
신청서 sin-cheong-seo
여권 yeo-kwon
앞 o-neul
우편요금 u-ŭ-ŏn-ŭ-ŏ-geum
우표 u-pyo
이거 i-geo
작전 jan-don
주소 ju-so
지난 주 ji-nan ju
작년 jig-ŭn
통장 만들기 tong-jiang man-ŭ-ŏl-ŭ-ŭ
통장 tong-jiang
편지 부지기 pyeong-ji bu-ji-gi
필요하신 것 pil-yo-ŭ-ŭ-sin geot
하나 ha-na

stamp, seal
money
registered mail
what?
receiver
pin (personal identification)
number
signature
name (hon.)
express mail
customer
fee, charge
check
ID card
application
which one?
passport
today
postage, postal charge
stamp
this one
change
address
last week
employee
opening a bank account
bank account
sending a piece of mail
something needed (hon.)
one

현금 hyeon-geum
현금카드 hyeon-geum-ka-deu
환율 hwan-nyul
환전하기 hwan-jeon-ŭ-ŭ-ge
10장 yeol-jiang
1300원 cheon-ŭ-ŏn-won
200원짜리 i-ŭ-ŏn-jae-ri
230원짜리 i-ŏ-ŭ-ŏn-jae-ri
30만원 sam-sim-ŭ-ŏn-won
3일 sam-il
5,000원 o-ŏn-ŭ-ŏn-won
500볼 o-ŏ-ŏ-ŭ-ŏn-bul

Verbs

가다 ga-da
gam-sa-ha-da
goeol-li-da
ong-je-ha-da
geu-reo-ta
geu-pa-da
gi-da-ri-da
do-wa-deu-ri-da
doe-da
deu-ri-da
man-deul-da
ba-ku-da
ba-kku-da
bo-nae-da
bo-yeo-ju-da
bi-ssa-da
sa-yong-ha-da
ssoe ju-da
ssoe-da
cash
ATM card
exchange rate
exchanging currency
ten sheets of paper
1300 won
200-won value
230-won value
300,000 won
three days
5,000 won
500 dollars

to go
to thank
to take time
to deduct
to be so
to be hurrying
to wait
to help (hon.)
to become
to give (hon.)
to make
to change
to change
to send
to show
to be expensive
to use
to write
to write
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

322

Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices

문법 Grammar

(1) The Ending ~(으)론요? ((eu)l-kka-yo?): “Shall I/ we...?,” “Do you think ...?”

The basic function of the ending ~(으)론요? is to ask for the listener's opinion. When the sentence's subject noun is “I” or “we” (when the speaker is the subject or a part of the subject), the ending ~(으)론요? is used. In addition to asking the listener's opinion, it allows one to suggest or offer to do something. Examples:

mentation어 먹을까요?
mwo meog-eul-kka-yo?
What are we going to eat?

커피 마실까요?
keo-pi ma-sil-kka-yo?
Shall we drink some coffee?

When used in the third person, the speaker is asking for the listener's opinion (i.e. “do you think ...?”). Examples:

길이 북장할까요?
gil-i bok-ja-pal-kka-yo?
Do you think the traffic will be busy?

일이 어려울까요?
il-i eo-ryeo-ul-kka-yo?
Do you think the task is difficult?
When used in the form ~(으) 까요, ... ~(으) 까요? the listener is given alternatives from which to choose. For example:

커피를 마실까요, 주스를 마실까요?
keo-pi-reul ma-sil-kka-yo, ju-seu-reul ma-sil-kka-yo?
Shall we drink coffee or juice?

Use ~을까요 when the verb stem ends in any consonant except ㄹ.
When the consonant is ㄹ, use ~_rx. When the stem ends in a vowel, ~ㄹ_rx is used.

(2) The Volitional: ~고 싶다 (go sip-da) vs. ~고 싶어하다 (go sip-eo-ha-da) “want to,” “would like to”

The pattern ~고 싶다 is used to state either what the speaker wishes to do or to ask what the listener would want. When indicating what a third person would want, one uses the ending ~고 싶어하다.

The past tense of ~고 싶어요 (go sip-eo-yo) / ~고 싶어해요 (go sip-eo-hae-yo) is ~고 싶어요 (go sip-eoss-eo-yo) / ~고 싶어해어요 (go sip-eo-haess-eo-yo), respectively; and the future prospective tense is ~고 싶을 거예요 (go sip-eul kkeo-ye-yo) / ~고 싶어할 거예요 (go sip-eo-hal kkeo-ye-yo).

Examples:

저는 한국에 가고 싶어요.
jeo-neun han-gug-e ga-go sip-eo-yo.
I want to go to Korea.

정호는 한국에 가고 싶어요.
jeong-ho-neun han-gug-e ga-go sip-eo-yo.
Jeong-ho wants to go to Korea.

저는 한국에 가고 싶을 거예요.
I will want to go to Korea.

정호는 한국에 가고 싶어할 거예요.
jeong-ho-neun han-gug-e ga-go sip-eo-hal kkeo-ye-yo.
Jeong-ho will want to go to Korea.

(3) Stating Cause: 때문에 (ttae-mun-e), ~기 때문에 (gi ttae-mun-e), and ~아/어서 (a/eo-seo) “because, because of”

The pattern ~기 때문에 is used when the speaker wishes to give a reason for something. It is the equivalent of the English prepositions “because” or “because of.” It is affixed to the verb stem, and can be used with a tense marker. It tends to be formal and often occurs in formal settings and in writing. The word 때문에 is used when the cause referred to is a noun.

When the sentence relates that something progresses from something else, rather than being its cause, the ending ~아/어서 is used. It cannot take any tense marker, and is most appropriate in the context of an apology, excuse, or when expressing gratitude. For example:

네이시 죄송합니다.
neuj-eo-seo joe-song-ham-ni-da.
I am sorry [because] I am late.
Neither 〜기 때문에 or 〜이/어서 may be used with a command (the imperative), or when making a proposition or suggestion.

(4) Expressing Intention: 〜의 라고 하다 ((eu)-ryeo-go ha-da) vs. 〜의 떼 ((eu)-reo)

To express an intention to perform a future action or to convey that something is about to happen, one uses the pattern 〜의 라고 하다. It can be used with any verb. This is in contrast to the pattern 〜의 떼, with which only verbs of coming or going can be used.

Examples:

오늘을 일찍 자려고 해요.
o-neul-eun il-jjik ja-ryeo-go hae-yo.
I plan to go to sleep early today.

버스가 지금 떠나려고 해요.
beo-sseu-ga ji-geum tteo-na-ryeo-go hae-yo.
The bus is about to depart.

텔레비전을 보려고 해요.
tel-le-bi-jeon-eul bo-ryeo-go hae-yo.
I am going to watch TV.

일하러 회사에 가요.
il-ha-reo hoe-sa-e ga-yo.
I go to the office to work.

의사 선생님을 만나러 병원에 왔어요.
I came to the hospital to meet a doctor.

(5) The Pattern 〜의 면 되다 ((eu)-myeon doe-da) “it would do if...,” “it would be good/all right if...”

The pattern 〜의 면 되다, which means “it would do if...,” or “it would be good/all right if...,” is used when indicating what is needed to perform an action or resolve a situation. When emphasizing that only one thing is needed, follow the noun with 만 (man) and affix 〜의 면 되요 to the verb stem. This pattern is best translated as “all one has to do is...”

(6) Money-related Expressions

돈을 찾아 don-eul chat-da to withdraw money
doen-eulbeol-da to earn money
doen-eul sseu-da to spend money
doen-eul bu-chi-da to send money
doen-eul bat-da to receive money
doen-eul ju-da to give money
doen-eul tta-da to win money
doen-eul il-ta to lose money
doen-eul il-eo-beo-ri-da to misplace money
doen-eul jup-da to find money
doen-eul mat-gi-da to need money
doen-i deul-da
Korean Currency

The unit of Korean currency is the won (원), which comes from the Chinese character for “circle.” There are five different coins in use:

- 1원 (원 원) (스원 il-won)
- 10원 (십원 sib-won)
- 50원 (오십원 o-sib-won)
- 100원 (백 원 baeg-won)
- 500원 (오백원 o-baeg-won)

There are three denominations of paper currency:

- 1000원 (천원 cheon-won)
- 5000원 (오천원 o-cheon-won)
- 10,000원 (만원 man-won)

Official checks are similar to traveler’s checks, and are issued at a bank.

Checks: 수표 su-pyo (자기앞수표 ja-gi-ap su-pyo)

One U.S. dollar is equal to approximately 1000 won.

Additional Vocabulary:

- 환율 hwan-nyul exchange rate
- 수수료 su-su-ryo fee, charge
- 은행거래신청서 eun-haeng-geo-rae-si-bi bank account application
- 입금표 ip-geum-pyo deposit slip
- 출금표 chul-geum-pyo withdrawal slip
- 비밀번호 bi-nil-beon-ho pin number
- 통장 tong-jang deposit and withdrawal record
- 도장 do-jang seal, stamp
- 현금카드 hyeon-geum-ka-deu ATM card
- 현금지급기 hyeon-geum-gi-geup-gi ATM machine
- 환율이 내려다 hwan-nyul-i nae-ri-da the exchange rate goes down
- 환율이 오르다 hwan-nyul-i o-reu-da the exchange rate goes up
- 환전을 하다 hwan-jeon-eul-ha-da to exchange money
- 돈을 받다 don-eul bu-chi-da to receive a letter/package
- 지급하다 jae-geum-ha-da to send a letter/package
- 예금하다 ye-geum-ha-da to deposit
- 우표를 사다 u-pyo-reul sa-da to buy a stamp
- 우표를 붙이다 u-pyo-reul bu-chi-da to put on a stamp
- 편지/소포를 받다 pyeon-ji/so-po-reul bat-da to receive a letter/package
- 편지/소포를 부치다 pyeon-ji/so-po-reul bu-chi-da to write a letter
- 편지를 쓰다 pyeon-ji-reul sseu-da to write a letter
- 답장을 쓰다 dap-jang-eul sseu-da to write a reply
- 주소를 쓰다 ju-so-reul sseu-da to write an address
- 받는 사람 ban-neun sa-ram recipient
- 보내는 사람 bo-nae-neun sa-ram sender
- 주소 ju-so address
- 성함 seong-ham name
- 성명 seong-myeong name
- 이름 i-reum name
- 중앙우체국 jung-ang-u-che-guk central post office
Lesson 11: Banks & Post Offices

Banks in Korea are usually open from 9:00 A.M. to 4:30 P.M. during the weekdays and closed on weekends. All banks provide currency exchange services. Customers pay utility bills at the bank, and any number of services, including balance transfers, can be done at an ATM.

Korea is cash oriented society. Many small shops do not accept credit cards, and personal checks do not exist. Only banks can issue checks.

Post offices are usually open on weekdays from 9:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M., and Saturdays from 9:00 A.M. to 1:00 P.M. They offer a great deal more than the U.S. postal service. One can do one's banking, mail-order local specialties, make train reservations, or buy express bus tickets. In the majority of offices, one can buy stamps from vending machines. When sending mail, one must address the envelope in macro-to-micro style, beginning with the country and ending with the person's name.
연습문제 Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 어서 오세요, 손님. 어떻게 도와드릴까요?
   eo-seo o-se-yo, son-nim. eo-tteo-ke do-wa-deu-ri-lkk-ya?
(2) 얼마나 예금하시겠습니까?
   eol-ma-na ye-geum-ha-si-get-seum-ni-kka?
(3) 얼마나 바꿔 드릴까요?
   eol-ma-na ba-kkwo deu-ri-lkk-ya?
(4) 돈은 현금으로 드릴까요, 수표로 드릴까요?
   don-eun hyeong-geum-eu-ro deu-ri-lkk-ya, su-pyo-ro deu-ri-lkk-ya?
(5) 이 소포 어떻게 보내실 겁니까?
   i so-po eo-tteo-ke bo-nae-sil kkeom-ni-kka?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) I would like to have a bank account.
(2) Would you please give me your ID and signature stamp?
(3) You need an ATM card, right?
(4) What is today's exchange rate?
(5) I took out the 5,000-won processing fee is taken out and gave you the rest.

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) I would like to have a bank account.
(2) Would you please give me your ID and signature stamp?
(3) You need an ATM card, right?
(4) What is today's exchange rate?
(5) I took out the 5,000-won processing fee is taken out and gave you the rest.

4. Please write the meaning of the phrases below and write sentences using them:

(1) don-eul chat-da
(2) don-eul beol-da
(3) don-eul bu-chi-da
(4) don-eul tta-da
(5) don-i deul-da

5. Please read the following numbers in Korean:

(1) 250원
(2) 78,350원
(3) 469,700원
(4) 1,257,800원
(5) 34,500,000원
6. Please write a paragraph about an experience in either a bank or a post office.

Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

표현 Patterns

어서 오세요. 어떻게 오셨어요?
eo-seo o-se-yo. eo-tteo-ke o-syeoss-eo-yo?
Welcome. What brings you here? (lit. What did you come here for?)

감기에 걸린 것 같아요.
gam-gi-e geol-lin geot gat-a-seo-yo.
It's because I think I caught a cold.

요즘 감기가 정말 독하지요?
yo-jeum gam-gi-ga jeong-mal do-ka-ji-yo?
The colds these days are really severe, right?

감받만 자기 앓어서 기다리세요.
Please sit there and wait a moment.

보험카드 좀 주시겠어요?
bo-heom-ka-deu jom ju-si-gess-eo-yo?
Would you please give me your health insurance card?

여기 있어요.
yeo-gi iss-eo-yo.
Here it is.

어디가 어렇게 아프세요?
eo-di-ga eo-tteo-ke a-peu-se-yo?
Where and how do you feel sick?

감기에 걸린 것 같은데 어지럽고 기운이 없어요.
gam-gi-e geol-lin geot gat-eun-de eo-ji-reop-go gi-un-i eops-eo-yo.
I think I have a cold; I feel dizzy and have no energy.

Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores

주고 땀이 나면서 기침을 자꾸 해요.
I feel cold and I am sweating, and I'm coughing constantly.

목도 아프고요. 손도 잘 못 쉬겠어요.
mok-do a-peu-go-yo. sum-do jal mot swi-gess-eo-yo.
My throat also hurts. And I cannot breathe easily.

어제 발새도록 살사하고 토했어요.
eo-je-bam-sae-do-rok seol-ssa-ha-go to-haess-eo-yo.
I had diarrhea and threw up all night yesterday.

 너무 어지러워서 앉아 있을 수가 없어요.
neu-mu eo-ji-reo-wo-seo anj-a iss-eul ssu-ga eops-eo-yo.
I feel so dizzy that I cannot stay seated.

지금도 자꾸 땀고 싶어요.
ji-geum-do ja-kku nup-go sip-eo-yo.
Even now I want to lie down.

 언제부터 살사하기 시작했어요?
eon-je-bu-teo seol-ssa-ha-gi si-ja-kaess-eo-yo?
When did your diarrhea start?

한 이틀 전부터요.
han i-teul jeon-bu-teo-yo.
About two days ago.

이쪽으로 앉아 보세요.
i-jjog-eu-ro anj-a bo-se-yo.
Please sit here.

숨을 크게 쉬어 보세요.
sun-eul keu-ge swi-eo bo-se-yo.
Take a deep breath, please.
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

338.

Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores

339.

그럼 다행이네요.
geu-reom da-haeng-i-ne-yo.
That's good. (lit. That would be fortunate.)

어떻게 오셨습니까?
eo-teo-ke o-syeot-seum-ni-kka?
What brings you here?

약들이 자주 붉고 암지질할 때 약물에서 자꾸 피가 나요.
in-mom-i ja-ju but-go yang-chi-jil hal tae in-mom-e-seo ja-kku pi-ga na-yo.
My gums are frequently swollen, and I often bleed when I brush my teeth.

그래요? 좀 불까요?
geu-rae-yo? jom bol-kka-yo?
Really? Can I see it for a moment?

증상이 별로 심하지는 않군요.
It is not that serious. (lit. The symptom is not that serious.)

그래도 치료를 좀 해야겠습니다.
But you have to get some treatment. (lit. But we still have to treat it.)

좀 아프실 걱정. 조금만 참으세요.
jom a-peu-sil kkeom-ni-da. jo-geum-man cham-eu-se-yo.
It will hurt a little bit. Just endure it for a bit, please.

다 됐습니다. 이제 양치질 하십시오.
da dwae-seum-ni-da. i-je yang-chi-jil ha-sip-si-o.
It's all done. Now rinse your mouth, please.
Why is this happening with my gums constantly? (lit. Why my gum is often doing like this?)

Some people have soft gums. (lit. There are some people who have weak gums.)

Please use an anti-peridentitis toothpaste whenever you brush your teeth.

Please give me an anti-peridentitis toothpaste, a box of floss, and a bottle of mouthwash, too.

What brand do you prefer?

Any one would be OK.
대화 Model Conversations

(1) 병원에서 byeong-won-e-seo
간호원: 어서 오세요. 어떻게 오셨어요?
eo-seo o-se-yo. eo-tteo-ke o-syecoseo-yo?
이해근: 감기에 걸린 것 같아서요.
gam-gi-e geol-lin-geot gat-a-seo-yo.
간호원: 요즘 감기가 정말 독하지요? 장난깐 자기 앓아서 기다리세요. 찐, 보험카드 좀 주시겠어요?
yo-jeum gamogi-ga jeong-mal do-ka-ji-yo?
cham, bo-heom-ka-deu jom ju-si-gess-eo-yo?
이해근: 여기 있어요.
yeo-gi iss-eo-yo.

(잠시 후 jam-si hu)

의사: 어디가 어렇게 아프세요?
eo-di-ga eo-tteo-ke a-peu-se-yo?
이해근: 감기에 걸린 것 같은데 어지럽고 기분이 없어요.
gam-gi-e geol-lin geot gat-eun-de eo-ji-reop-go gi-un-i cops-co-yo.
chup-go tam-i na-myeo-geo si-chim-eul ja-ku hae-yo.
mok-do a-peu-go-yo.
그리고 습도 잘 못 쫓겨고요, 어제 방새도록 설사하고 했어요.
너무 어지러워서 않아 있을 수가 없어요. 지금도 자꾸 놓고 싶어요.
neomu eo-ji-reo-wo-seo anj-a iss-eul su-ga cops-co-yo.
ji-geum-do ja-ku nup-go sip-eo-yo.

그래도 치료를 좀 해아겠습니까.

jom a-peu-sil kkeom-ni-da. jo-geum-man cham-eu-se-yo.

(정시 후) 다 왔습니다. 이제 양치질 하십시오.
(jam-si si hu) da dwaet-seum-ni-da. i-je yang-chi-jil ha-sip-si-o.

이해관: 잇몸이 왜 자꾸 그러지요?
in-mom-i wae ja-ku geu-reo-ji-yo?

시사: 잇몸이 좀 약한 사람들이 있어요. 양치질할 때 꼭 치주염 예방을 치약을 사용하세요.
in-mom-i jom ya-kan sa-ram-deul-I iss-eo-yo.
yang-chil-jil-hal tae kkok chi-ju-yeom ye-bang-nyong chi-yag-eul sa-yong-ha-se-yo.

그리고 양치질한 다음에 플로스하고 마우스워시 꼭 하시고요.
플로스 사용하실 줄은 알지요?
peul-lo-ssu sa-yong-ha-sil jul-eun al-ji-yo?

이해관: 네, 알아요.

ne, al-a-yo.

(3) 약국에서 yak-gug-e-seo

약사: 이어서 오세요. 월도와 드릴까요?
eo-seo o-se-yo. mwol do-wa deu-ril-kka-yo?

이해관: 의사 선생님이 처방전을 주셨는데요.
ui-sa seon-sang-nim-i cheo-bang-jeon-eul ju-syeon-neun-de-yo.

약사: 그래요? 여기 주세요.... 장만한 가디시세요.
geu-reo-se-yo? i-ri ju-se-yo. jam-kkan-man
(1) At a hospital
Nurse: Welcome. How may I help you?
Lee: I think I have a cold.
Nurse: The colds these days are really severe, right? Please have sit there and just wait a moment. Oh, would you please give me your health insurance card?
Lee: Here it is.

(after a while)
Doctor: Where and how does it hurt?
Lee: I think I have a cold; I feel dizzy and have no energy. I am cold and sweating, and I am coughing constantly. My throat hurts, too. And I cannot breathe easily, and I had diarrhea and threw up all night yesterday. I feel so dizzy that I cannot sit down properly. Even now I would like to lie down.

Doctor: When did you start having diarrhea?
Lee: About two days ago.

Doctor: I need to do some tests. How long has it been since your last period?
Lee: I had it on the 15th of last month. How is my condition?

Doctor: I’ll see the details after the tests, but I think you have enteritis.
Lee: Really? Then what should I do?

Doctor: Because there are lots of good medicines these days, you don’t need to worry too much.

Lee: That would be good.

(2) At a dentistry
Dentist: What brings you here?
Lee: My gums get frequently swollen, and I often bleed when I brush my teeth.
Dentist: Really? Let me see... It is not that serious. But you still need some treatment. This will hurt a bit. Please be patient. (after a while) It’s all done. Now rinse your mouth, please.

Lee: What’s happening on my gum?
Dentist: There are some people who have weaker gums. For sure, please use an anti-peridentitis toothpaste whenever you brush your teeth. And don’t forget to floss and use mouthwash every time you brush your teeth. You know how to use floss, right?

Lee: Yes, I know.

(3) At a pharmacy
Pharmacist: Welcome. How may I help you?
Lee: My doctor gave me a prescription.
Pharmacist: Is that so? Please give it to me. Please wait for a minute. (after a while) With these pills, please take two after every meal, three times a day. And with this liquid, please take one cup in the morning and in the afternoon on an empty stomach.

Lee: OK, I understand. Oh, and give me an anti-peridentitis toothpaste, a box of floss, and a bottle of mouthwash, please.

Pharmacist: Do you have any preference?
Lee: Any one would be OK.
어휘 Vocabulary

Nouns / Pronouns:

간호원 gan-ho-won  
간기 gam-gi  
마우스위시 ma-u-seu-wo-si  
목 mok  
물약 mul-lyak  
병원 byeong-won  
보험카드 bo-heom-ka-deu  
사람들 sa-ram-deul  
상태 sang-tae  
아침 a-chim  
알약 al-lyak  
약국 yak-guk  
약사 yak-sa  
여제 eo-je  
예방용 ye-bang-nyong  
의사 ui-sa  
의사 선생님 ui-sa seon-saeng-nim  
이복 i-jjok  
임금 in-mom  
장염 jang-yeom  

계생 jeo-nyeok  
제품 je-pum  
좋은 약 jo-eun yak  
증상 jeung-sang  
지난 날 ji-nan dal  
처방전 cheo-bang-jeon  
치과 chi-kkw  
치실 chi-sil  
치약 chi-yak  
nurse  
cold  
mouthwash  
throat, neck  
liquid medicine  
hospital  
people  
condition  
morning  
pill, tablet  
drugstore  
pharmacist  
yesterday  
prescription  
dentistry  
floss  
toothpaste

Verbs:

감기에 걸리다 gam-gi-e geol-li-da  
적절하다 geok-jeong-ha-da  
검사를 한다 geom-sa-reul ha-da  
그렇다 geu-reo-ta  
기다리다 gi-da-ri-da  
기분이 없다 gi-un-i eop-da  
기침을 한다 gi-chim-eul ha-da  
늘다 nup-da  
다 되다 da doe-da  
다형하다 da-haeng-i-da  
도와 드리다 do-wa deu-ri-da  
독하다 do-ka-da  
드리다 deu-ri-da  
들다 deul-da  
땀이 나다 ttam-i na-da  
많다 man-ta  
보다 bo-da  
보다 but-da  
사용하다 sa-yong-ha-da  
생리하다 saeng-ri-ha-da  
설사하다 seol-ssa-ha-da  
숨을 쉬다 sum-eul swi-da  
심하다 sim-ha-da  
'아'하다 a-ha-da  
to catch a cold  
to worry  
to get examined  
to be so  
to wait  
to have no energy  
to cough  
to lay down  
to be finished  
to be lucky  
to help (hon.)  
to be strong, to be severe  
to give (hon.)  
to take  
to sweat  
to be many  
to see  
to be swollen  
to use  
to be having one's period,  
to be menstruating  
to have diarrhea  
to breathe  
to be serious  
to say “ah”
Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores

요즘 yo-jeum
이제 i-je
지금 ja-ku
지금 ja-ju
잠깐만 jam-kkan-man
저기 jeo-gi
잠들 jeong-mal
조금만 jo-geum-man
지금도 ji-geum-do
참 cham
크게 keu-ge
하루에 ha-ru-e
한 이틀 전 han i-teul jeon
한 컵씩 han-keop-ssik

these days
now
again and again
often
for a minute
there
really
a little
even now
oh
widely, big, loudly
per day
about two days ago
one cup (at a time)

to be hurt, to be sick
to be sick
to sit
to be sitting
to know
to be weak
to brush one's teeth
to be how?
to be dizzy
to have intestinal trouble
to be patient
to feel cold, to be cold
to treat
to vomit
to bleed

to be hurt, to be sick
to be sick
to sit
to be sitting
to know
to be weak
to brush one's teeth
to be how?
to be dizzy
to have intestinal trouble
to be patient
to feel cold, to be cold
to treat
to vomit
to bleed

Adverbs / Prepositions / Conjunctions

공복에 gong-bog-e
그래도 geu-rae-do
그리고 geu-ni-go
곧 kkok
너무 neo-mu
마지막으로 ma-ji-mag-eu-ro
밤새도록 bam-sae-do-rok
벌로 byeol-lo
식후에 sik-hu-e
아무 a-mu
어디 eo-di
어떤 eo-tteon
어떻게 eo-tteo-ke
어서 eo-seo
인제 con-je
왜 wae

on an empty stomach
even it is true
and
for sure
too
at last
for all night
not particularly
after a meal
any
where
which, a certain
how
quickly
when
why
문법 Grammar

(1) Number of Days (using cardinal numbers)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
<th>Native Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one day</td>
<td>일일 il-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two days</td>
<td>이일 i-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three days</td>
<td>삼일 sa-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four days</td>
<td>사일 sa-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five days</td>
<td>오일 o-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six days</td>
<td>육일 yug-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seven days</td>
<td>칠일 chil-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eight days</td>
<td>팔일 pal-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nine days</td>
<td>구일 gu-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten days</td>
<td>십일 sib-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifteen days</td>
<td>십오일 sib-o-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twenty days</td>
<td>이십일 i-sib-il</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) The Pattern ~기 시작하다 (gi si-ja-ka-da) “begin to...,” “start to...”

One uses the pattern ~기 시작하다 to indicate that one is beginning or starting to perform an action. In the past tense (began to, begun to), one uses ~기 시작했어요 (gi si-ja-kaess-eo-yo). With the future tense (will begin to), the ending ~기 시작할 거예요 (gi si-ja-kal kkeo-ye-yo) is used.

(3) The Pattern ~(으)로 수 있다/없다 (eun ssu it-da/eop-da) “can / cannot...” vs. ~(으)로 줄 알다/모르다 (eun jul al-da/mo-reu-da) “know / don’t know how to...”

When the pattern ~(으)로 수 있다/없다 is affixed to a verb, it indicates that one can or cannot perform the action in question. It is equivalent to the verb 문 것으로 followed by the verb stem with the suffix ~(으)로 지지 못한다. One’s capability or lack thereof can be due to any number of reasons. Examples:

테니스를 잘 할 수 있지만 비가 와서 오늘은 할 수 없어요.
te-ni-seu-reul chil jul al-ji-man bi-ga wa-seo o-neul-eun chil sue ops-eo-yo.
I know how to play tennis, but I cannot play today because it is raining.

불고기를 만들 줄 알지 않으니서 지금은 만들 수 없어요.
I know how to cook bul-go-gi, but I cannot make it now because I don’t have beef.

The pattern ~(으)로 줄 알다/모르다 is restricted to indicating one’s knowledge or lack of it regarding performing the action.

(4) Expressing Concurrent Actions: ~(으)면서 ((eun)-myeon-seo) “while...”

To indicate that two actions are concurrent, one uses the pattern ~(으)면서, the equivalent of the English “while.” The tense of the actions should only be indicated in the final clause. Examples:

밥을 먹으면서 텔레비전을 보어요.
bab-eul meog-eu-myeon-seo tel-le-bi-jeon-eul bwa-yo.
I am watching TV while I am eating.
Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores

(5) Washing

Although the word wash in English is used to describe most acts of hygiene and cleaning, Korean uses different verbs according to what is being washed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>손/발을 씻다</td>
<td>to wash one’s hands/feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>양치질을 하다</td>
<td>to brush one’s teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이를 닦다</td>
<td>to brush one’s teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세수를 하다</td>
<td>to wash one’s face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머리를 감다</td>
<td>to wash one’s hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>샤워를 하다</td>
<td>to take a shower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목욕을 하다</td>
<td>to take a bath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>샴푸를 하다</td>
<td>to do laundry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>설거지를 하다</td>
<td>to wash dishes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6) Emotions and Feelings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>기쁘다</td>
<td>to be happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손프다</td>
<td>to be sad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스트레스가 많다/싶다</td>
<td>to be stressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seu-teu-re-sseu-ga man-ta / ssa-i-da</td>
<td>to relieve stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스트레스가 플리다</td>
<td>to be relieved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seu-teu-re-sseu-ga pul-li-da</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋아하다</td>
<td>to be good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싫다</td>
<td>to not be likable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싸나다</td>
<td>to be excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>심심하다</td>
<td>to feel bored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지루하다</td>
<td>to be bored to death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피곤하다</td>
<td>to be tired</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
참고학습 Further Study

Hospitals and Calling for Medical Help

병원 byeong-won
내과 nae-kkwa
소아과 so-a-kkwa
안과 an-kkwa
외과 oe-kkwa
치과 chi-kkwa
간호사 gan-ho-sa
간호원 gan-ho-won
약사 yak-sa
의사 ui-sa
의료보험카드 ui-ryo-bo-heom-ka-deu
처방전 cheo-bang-jeon
먹는 약 meong-neun nyak
바른 약 ba-reu-neun nyak
가루약 ga-ru-yak
물약 mul-lyak
알약 al-lyak
식전(에) sik-jeon-(e)
식후(에) si-ku-(e)
공복에 gong-bog-e

hospital, clinic
department of internal medicine
pediatrics
ophthalmology (eye)
department of external medicine
dentistry
nurse
nurse
pharmacist
doctor
health insurance card
prescription
pills
ointment
powdered medicine
liquid medicine
tablet/pill
before a meal
after a meal
on an empty stomach

Medical Services

약을 먹다 yag-eul meok-da
collapsing to get a general
 Jong-hap-geom-sa-reul ha-da/bat-da
to get injected
ju-sa-reul mat-da
to be examined
jini-chal-eul ha-da/bat-da
in a hospital
il-eul ha-da
heo-won-ha-da
to hospitalize

Body Parts

가슴 ga-seum
귀 gwi
눈 nun
da리 da-ri
등 deung
미리 meo-ri
목 mok
무릎 mu-reup
발 bal
발가락 bal-kka-rak
배 bae
손 son
손가락 son-kka-rak
어깨 eo-kkae
아랫골 eol-gul
영덩이 eong-deong-i
아이 i
입 ip
코 ko
턱 teok
팔 pal
허리 heo-ri
chest/breast
ear
eye
leg
back
head
knee
foot
toe
belly
hand
finger
shoulder
face

butt, hip
tooth
mouth
nose
chin
arm
waist
Symptoms

감기에 걸리다 gam-gi geol-li-da
기분이 없다 gi-un-i eop-da
기침을 하다 gi-chim-eul ha-da
dachida da-chi-da
머리가 아프다 meo-ri-ga a-peu-da
목감기에 걸리다
mokgam-gi geol-li-da
목이 붓다 mog-i bu-da
배가 아프다 bae-ga a-peu-da
상처가 나다 sang-cheo-ga na-da
살사리를 하다 seol-ssa-reul ha-da
소화가 안 되다 so-hwa-ga an-doe-da
숨쉬기가 힘들다
sumswigi-ga him-deul-da
어지럼다 eo-ji-reop-da
열이 난다 yeol-i na-da
이가 아프다 i-ga a-peu-da
코가 맑히다 ko-ga ma-ki-da
콧물이 난다 kon-mul-i na-da
t토하다 to-ha-da
피가 난다 pi-ga na-da
파뭇하다 pi-gon-ha-da

to have a cold
to be lacking in energy
to cough
to get injured
to have a headache
to have a sore throat
to have a sore throat
to have stomach pain
to get hurt
to have diarrhea
to have indigestion
to have difficulty breathing
to be dizzy
to have a fever
to have a toothache
to have nasal congestion
to have a runny nose
to have been vomiting
to bleed
to be tired

Cultural Note

Hospitals in Korea

In the United States, the terms “hospital,” “medical clinic,” and “doctor’s office” indicate the size of the facility and the level of service provided. In Korea, all facilities are called 병원. Reservations are not required, but waits at general hospitals can be several hours. At other hospitals, the wait can be less than thirty minutes. One dials 119 for emergencies.

Most Korean citizens have medical insurance. In 1976, legislation was passed that required large companies to provide insurance for their employees. More recently, insurance benefits have been made mandatory for public employees and the employees of private schools. For those who do not qualify for these and other types of private insurance, the option is available to join a community health insurance plan. These are accepted at almost all 병원, whether they are general hospitals, dental clinics, midwife clinics, pharmacies, or facilities specializing in traditional Asian medicine.
Lesson 12: Hospitals & Drugstores

Exercises

1. Please respond to the following:

(1) 어서 오세요. 어떻게 오셨어요? eo-seo o-se-yo. eo-tteo-ke o-syeoss-eo-yo?
(2) 어디가 어떻게 아프세요? eo-di-ga eo-tteo-ke a-peu-se-yo?
(3) 언제부터 아프기 시작하셨어요? eon-je-bu-teo a-peu-gi si-ja-ka-syeoss-eo-yo?
(4) 어떤 회사 제품으로 드릴까요? eo-tteon hoe-sa je-pum-eu-ro deu-nil-kka-yo?
(5) 마지막으로 식사를 하신 게 언제지요? ma-ji-mag-eu-ro sik-sa-reul ha-sin ge eon-je-ji-yo?

2. Please translate the following into English:

(1) 감기에 걸린 것 같은데 어지럽고 기운이 없어요.
   gam-gi-e geol-lin geot gat-eun-de eo-ji-reop-go gi-un-i eops-eo-yo.
(2) 출고 많이 나면서 기침을 자꾸 해요.
(3) 어제 방세도록 설사하고 했어요.
   eo-je bamm-sae-do-rok seolssa-ha-go to-haess-eo-yo.
(4) 너무 어리러서 잃어 있을 수가 없어요.
   neo-mu eo-ji-reo-wo-seo anj-a iss-eul su-ga eops-eo-yo.
(5) 검사를 해 볼아 알겠지만 장염에 걸린 것 같아요.
(6) 요즘은 좋은 약이 많으니까 걱정 많이 안 하셔도 괜찮아요.

3. Please translate the following into Korean:

(1) My gums are frequently swollen, and I often bleed when I brush my teeth.
(2) For sure, please use an anti-peridentitis toothpaste when you brush your teeth.
(3) With these pills, please take two after every meal, three times a day.
(4) Please give me an anti-peridentitis toothpaste, a box of floss, and a bottle of mouthwash.
(5) Please use floss and mouthwash for sure after you brush your teeth.

4. Please write the meaning of the words below and compose sentences using them:

(1) sim-sim-ha-da
(2) ji-ru-ha-da
(3) pi-gon-ha-da
(4) sin-na-da
(5) mu-seop-da

5. Please fill in the blanks with the appropriate words:

[내과, 외과, 소아과, 안과, 치과]

(1) 배가 아프거나 갓기에 걸리면 _______에 가야 합니다.
(2) 눈이 아프면 _______에 가야 합니다.
(3) 이가 아플 때는 _______에 가야 합니다.
(4) 뇌나 어린이가 아프 때는 _______에 가야 합니다.
(5) 넘어졌을 때 피가 많이 나면 _______에 가야 합니다.
6. Please write a paragraph about your experience in a hospital.

Key to Exercises
Lesson 1

2.

(1) Thank you.
(2) Excuse me.
(3) I am sorry.
(4) Welcome.
(5) Don’t mention it.

3.

(1) 그 동안 어땠게 지내셨습니까? geu-dong-an eo-tteo-ke ji-nae-syeot-seum-ni-kka?
(2) 덕분에 잘 지냈습니다. deok-bun-e jal ji-naet-seum-ni-da.
(3) 오래만났습니다. o-rae-gan-man-im-ni-da.
(5) 다시 볼게 되어서 반갑습니다. da-si boep-ge dwae-seo ban-gap-seum-ni-da.

Lesson 2

2.

(1) I come from Korea. I live in Su-won.
(2) I am not Korean. I am Chinese.
(3) You and I are the same age. I am 32 years old, too.
(4) We don’t have a kid yet. There are only two of us, my wife and I.

3.


Lesson 3

2.

(1) There is a shopping center inside the apartment complex, so it is very convenient.
(2) I moved last Friday and almost finished putting things in order during the weekend.
(3) That building has had construction these past few days, so it is too crowded.
(4) There is a coffee shop in the basement of the Je-il building.
(5) Please cross the signal light and go straight on your right-hand side.

3.

(1) 책상 위에 컴퓨터가 있어요. chaek-sang wi-e keom-pyu-teo-ga iss-eo-yo.
(2) 제 가방은 탁자 일에 있어요. je ga-bang-eun tak-ja mit-e iss-eo-yo.
(3) 창문 앞에 전화기가 있어요. chim-dae yeop-e jeon-hwa-gi-ga iss-eo-yo.
(4) 창문은 소파 뒤에 있어요. chang-mun-eun sso-pa dwi-e iss-eo-yo.
(5) 거실 앞에 문이 있어요. geo-sil ap-e mun-i iss-eo-yo.

Lesson 4

2.

(1) Yesterday was my sister’s birthday and I completely forgot.
(2) It conflicts with the newcomer’s reception.
(3) Tomorrow is the day of my college alumni reunion.
(4) It’s almost time to go home already.
3. **BEGINNER'S KOREAN**

Key to Exercises

367

1. 채구백구십칠년 창월 심육일 chon-gu-baek-gu-sip-chil-lyeon chil-wol sim-nyug-il
2. 오후 열두시 심시분 o-ho yeol-ttu-si sim-sip-bun
3. 채구백육십오년 율월 심십일 cheon-gu-baek-yuk-sip-o-nyeon yu-wol sim-sip-il
4. 오후 세시 심시분 o-ho se-si sa-sip-o-bun
5. 이천사년 팔월 첫일 i-cheon-sa-nyeon pal-wol chil-il
6. 오전 일곱시 심시분 o-jeon il-gop-si sib-o-bun
7. 이천년 시월 이십구일 i-cheon-nyeon si-wol i-sip-gu-il
8. 오전 아홉시 이십분 o-jeon a-hop-si i-sip-bun
9. 이천육년 십이월 이십일 i-cheon-nyung-nyeon sib-i-wol i-sip-o-il
10. 오전 열시 심시분 o-jeon yeol-ssi sa-sip-bun

Lesson 5

2.

1. Please say to call back to the office as soon as she gets the message.
2. Everyone knows there is a staff meeting tomorrow at 4:00, right?
3. I contacted everyone yesterday, but I couldn’t get a hold of one person.
4. I urgently need to contact him, but I don’t have his phone number.
5. I am sorry for calling you so late at night.

3.

1. Please say that the battery is worn out.

Lesson 6

2.

1. It is showing unusually high temperatures not only in Korea but all around the world these days.
2. It’s worse in Korea because it’s so humid in the summer.
3. It’s so hot and humid that I don’t want to go out.
4. Actually I had a plan to go to see a movie tomorrow with my friend.
5. It’s a new spy movie and supposed to be really good.

3.

1. You should stop by a watch repair shop when you go home.
2. Don’t you think it might be that the battery is worn out?
3. I should stop by a watch repair shop when I go home.
4. Don’t you think it might be that the battery is worn out?
5. I should stop by a watch repair shop when I go home.
6. Don’t you think it might be that the battery is worn out?
Lesson 7

2.
(1) This design sells the most these days.
(2) Doesn’t this need to be dry-cleaned?
(3) We got a lot of dress pants that don’t need to be dry-cleaned these days.
(4) The regular price is 100,000 won, but there’s a sale now so it will be discounted 25%.
(5) Elderly people like plain colors less than young people do these days.
(6) I think this dark yellow dress shirt and the striped tie would match well.
(7) A plain-color one that matches well with any clothes would be great.

3.
(1) 마시겠어요. ma-shi-ge-yo.
(2) 보세요. bo-se-yo.
(3) 맛없어요. ma-keo-yo.
(4) 물없어요. mul-yeoss-eo-yo.
(5) 빨갛어요. ppae-gyeoss-eo-yo.

4.
(1) 입고 ip-go
(2) 메고 mae-go
(3) 신고 sin-kko
(4) 깼고 kki-go
(5) 쓰고 sseu-go
(6) 빨고 beot-go
(7) 풀고 pul-go
(8) 빨고 beot-go
(9) 배고 ppae-go
(10) 빨고 beot-go

Lesson 8

2.
(1) The time seems to be going by so fast today.
(2) All the foods are relatively good there. The restaurant is clean also.
(3) It’s my treat today. (or I will treat you today.)
(4) I brought a guest with me today, so please be especially nice.
(5) Please give us some cold water and wet towels, too.
(6) That’s why I am a regular customer at this place, you know?

3.
(1) 여기 모두 얼마만큼이에요? yeo-gi mo-du eol-ma-jeong-eon-ke?
(2) 많이 파세요. man-i pa-se-yo.
(3) 덕분에 잘 먹었습니다. deok-bun-e jal meog-eoss-eum-ni-da.
(5) 장사 잘 되시지요? jang-sa jal doe-si-ji-yo?
(6) 임직 나오셨네요. il-jijk na-o-nyeon-nye-yo.

4.
(1) 핵심에 컴퓨터가 없어요. chaek-sang wi-e keom-pu-teo-ga eops-eo-yo.
(2) 우리 아버지는 선생님의 아내세요. u-ri a-beo-jei-neun scon-seung-nil-i a-ni-se-yo.
(3) 저는 한국어를 잘 드리요. jeo-neun han-gug-eo-reul jal mol-la-yo.
(4) 저는 한국음식을 안 좋아요. jeo-neun han-gug-eum-sig-eul an jo-a-hae-yo.
(5) 제 여자친구는 별로 안 예뻐요. jeo-ja-chin-gu-neun byeoel-lo an ye-ppeo-yo.
Lesson 9

2.
(1) Would you like to look at these magazines while you are waiting?
(2) Your hair is pretty thick so without the layering, it will look stuffy.
(3) Since your hair is so dark, try tinting your hair.
(4) Don't change the shape of the hair and just trim it a little shorter, please.
(5) I guess my hair grows faster than other people's.

3.
(1) 태웠어요. tae-woss-eo-yo
(2) 끝어요. kkeul-yeo-yo
(3) 울어요. ul-lyeo-yo
(4) 빚어요. beot-geo-yo
(5) 임혀요. i-lyeo-yo
(6) 납춰 주세요. nat-chwo ju-se-yo
(7) 재워요. jae-wo-yo

Lesson 10

2.
(1) Don't you think traffic is a lot smoother during the weekdays rather than the weekends?

Key to Exercises

(2) May I have your passport and plane ticket?
(3) If it leaves at 12:30, what time can I expect it to arrive in Pusan?
(4) Since this train will directly take you to Pusan, you will not need to change trains.
(5) The gate number is 38 and your seat number is 27A.

3.
(1) 길이 많이 막히네요. gil-i ma-ki-ne-yo.
(2) 기차 타는 데가 어디죠? gi-cha ta-neun de-ga eo-di-jyo?
(3) 부산행 1시(한 시간)표 두장만 주세요. bu-san-haeng han-si-pyo du-jang-man ju-se-yo.
(4) 저기 홍교 앞에 세워 주세요. jae-gi gi-yuk-gyo mit-e se-wo ju-se-yo.
(5) 잔돈은 그냥 가지세요. jan-don-eun geu-nyang ga-ji-se-yo.

Lesson 11

2.
(1) My passport can be used as an ID, right? And I don't have a stamp.
(2) Please write your name, address, and pin number on this application form.
(3) Please give me everything in checks and only the change in cash.
(4) Express mail will take three days, but it's a little expensive. Are you in a hurry?
(5) If you send it as air-mail, it will take about a week.
(6) Because of the price increase last week, you will probably need to use 230-won stamps now.

3.
(1) 통장을 하나 만들려고 하는데요. tong-jang-eul ha-na man-deul-lyeo-go ha-neun-de-yo.
Lesson 12

2.

(1) I feel like I have a cold; I am dizzy and have no energy.
(2) I am cold and sweating, and I am coughing frequently.
(3) I have had diarrhea and was throwing up all night yesterday.
(4) I feel so dizzy that I cannot sit down.
(5) I will see the details after tests, but I think you have enteritis.
(6) Because there are lots of good medicines these days, you don’t need to worry too much.

Key to Exercises

3.

(1) ᄀ様이 자주 봇고 양치질할 때 ᄀ様에서 자꾸 피가 나오.
(2) 양치질할 때 꼭 치주염 예방용 치약을 사용하세요.
(3) 이 약을 하루에 3번(세 번)씩 석후에 2알(두 알)씩 드세요.
(4) 치주염 예방용 치약하고 휼로스킹 마우스워시도 하세요.
(5) 양치질 한 다음에 휼로스킹하고 마우스워시 꼭 하시고요.

4.

(1) to feel bored
(2) to be bored to death
(3) to be tired
(4) to be excited
(5) to be scared/afraid
Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar
1. WORD ORDER

Korean is a predicate-final language. All sentences end with the predicate, i.e. the verb or adjective. All other elements in the sentence, such as the subject or object, appear before the predicate. Korean particles, the equivalent of English prepositions (e.g. from, in, with, or to), always appear after the noun or pronoun to which they're related. The elements before the predicate can be placed in any order as long as the sentence ends with the predicate, a tendency that has led to Korean being called a "free word order" language.

Consider this English sentence: Michael eats breakfast at a restaurant in the morning. Let's break it down into its component parts:

Michael <subject>
eats <predicate>
breakfast <object>
at a restaurant <location> (at is the preposition/particle)
in the morning <time> (in is the preposition/particle)

Now let's convert this to a Korean structural pattern:

Michael (+ subject marker) <subject>
the morning + in <time + time particle>
a restaurant + at <location + location particle>
breakfast (+ object marker) <object>
eats <predicate>

So, in Korean, this would be:

(a-chim-e) (ma-i-keul-i) (sik-dang-e-seo) (bab-eul) (meong-neun-da)
the morning-in Michael a restaurant-at breakfast eats.

Other possibilities include:

a restaurant-at the morning-in Michael breakfast eats.

2. SPEECH LEVELS

Korean has four speech levels that indicate the speaker's interpersonal relationship with the hearer. These speech levels are indicated by sentence-final suffixes attached to predicates. These suffixes are illustrated below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Speech Level</th>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Request</th>
<th>Suggestion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deferential</td>
<td>(meok-seum-ni-da)</td>
<td>(meok-seum-ni-ga?)</td>
<td>(meok-seum) (sip-si-eo)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polite</td>
<td>(meog-eo-ya)</td>
<td>(meog-eo)</td>
<td>(meog-eo-ya)</td>
<td>(meog-eo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intimate</td>
<td>(meog-eo)</td>
<td>(meog-eo)</td>
<td>(meog-eo)</td>
<td>(meog-eo)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example, 먹습니다 (meok-seum-ni-da), 먹어요 (meog-eo-ya), 먹어 (meog-eo), and 먹는다 (meong-neun-da) all mean [someone] eats, expressed in different speech levels.

The most common level used to an adult is the polite one. While the deferential level is used mostly by male speakers in formal situations such as news reports or public lectures, the polite level is widely used by both males and females in daily conversation.

The intimate level and the plain level are used by an old person when speaking to a younger one, by a child to his or her siblings, or between close friends whose friendship began in childhood or adolescence.
3. PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person</td>
<td>나 / 내</td>
<td>지 / 제</td>
<td>제</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I, me, myself)</td>
<td>na / nae</td>
<td>jeo / je</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td>너</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(you)</td>
<td>neo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person</td>
<td>이/그/저사람</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(for a person)</td>
<td>ilgeui/jeo-sa-ram</td>
<td>ilgeui/jeo-bun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(he, she, it, etc.)</td>
<td>i/geu/jeo-sa-ram</td>
<td>i/geu/jeo-bun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The use of personal pronouns is not common in Korean, except for the first person pronoun. With the second and third person, usually either the name or title is used.

Plural Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person</td>
<td>우리(들)</td>
<td>저희(들)</td>
<td>제희(들)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(we)</td>
<td>u-ri-(deul)</td>
<td>jeo-hui-(deul)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td>너희(들)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(you all)</td>
<td>neo-hui-(deul)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person</td>
<td>이/그/저사람들</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(they)</td>
<td>ilgeui/jeo-sa-ram-deul</td>
<td>ilgeui/jeo-bun-deul</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i/geu/jeo-sa-ram-deul</td>
<td>i/geu/jeo-bun-deul</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural nouns in English use a plural suffix, e.g. the “s” in “fields”. In Korean, the plural suffix -니(-ta, -da) is optional and rarely used.
4. DEMONSTRATIVES

For the topic markers, subject markers and object markers, please see the section on particles below.

이 (이) (near speaker)
이것/이기 (topic) 이기 (subj.) 이걸 (obj.)
i-geot/i-geo

아/어기 (place) 어족 (direction) 어 사람이 (person) 이분 (person, hon.)
yeo-gi i-jok i-sa-ram i-bun

그 (geu)
that (near listener)
그것/그기 (topic) 그기 (subj.) 그걸 (obj.)
geu-geot/geu-geo
geu-ge eu-geol

가기 (place) 가족 (direction) 가 사람이 (person) 가분 (person, hon.)
geo-gi geo-jok i-geon i-bun

5. PARTICLES

Particles are words that indicate the context in which one is to understand the noun, phrase, or sentence to which they are attached. They are usually short, often no more than a syllable, and some have functions similar to such English prepositions as in, to, at, and with. Others are used as markers for the subject and object nouns in a sentence. Remember that particles always come after the sentence elements they modify. Occasionally, different particles are used depending on whether the word to which they are attached ends with a consonant or a vowel.

Subject
-이 (used after a consonant) 학생/이
(-i) (hak-saeng-i) student (+ subject marker [subj.])

가 (used after a vowel) 의사가
(-ga) (ui-sa-ga) doctor (+ subj.)

께서서 (honorific) 아버지께서서
(-kke-seo) (a-beo-j-i-kke-seo) father (+ subj.)

Object
-을 (used after a consonant) 책상/을
(-eul) (chaek-sang-eul) desk (+ object marker [obj.])

-을 (used after a vowel) 의자/을
(-reul) (ui-ja-reul) chair (+ obj.)

Topic
-을 (used after a consonant) 한국말/을
(-eun) (han-gung-mal-eun) Korean language (+ topic marker [top.])

-는 (used after a vowel) 한국어/는
(-nueun) (han-gug-eo-nueun) Korean language (+ top.)
Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar

**Dative (Indirect Object)**

-에게  
(Starting point of action)  
(\(-e-ge)\)  
(\(\text{chim-gu-e-ge}\))  
(to my friend)

-한테  
(colloquial)  
(\(-han-te)\)  
(\(\text{chim-gu-han-te}\))  
(to my friend)

-께  
(honorific)  
(\(-kke)\)  
(\(\text{a-boe-ji-kke}\))  
(to my friend)

**Source**

-에게서  
(\(-e-ge-seo)\)  
(\(\text{chim-gu-e-ge-seo}\))  
(from my friend)

-한테서  
(colloquial)  
(\(-han-te-seo)\)  
(\(\text{chim-gu-han-te-seo}\))  
(from my friend)

**Location**

-에  
(\(-e)\)  
(\(\text{chim-gu-e-seo}\))  
(from my friend)

**Time**

-에  
(\(-e)\)  
(\(\text{chim-gu-e-seo}\))  
(from my friend)

-에서 ...까지  
(from ... to ...)  
(\(\text{chim-e-seo ... kka-jji}\))  
(from my friend)

**Purpose**

-에  
(\(-e)\)  
(\(\text{chim-gu-e-seo}\))  
(from my friend)

-에서  
(place of action)  
(\(-e-seo)\)  
(\(\text{chim-gu-e-seo}\))  
(from my friend)

**Miscellaneous**

-에  
(by means of)  
(\(-e)\)  
(\(\text{chim-gu-e-seo}\))  
(from my friend)
6. QUESTION WORDS

누가 (nu-ga) who (subject)
누구 (nu-gu) who (question)
무슨 일들 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
누구를 찾으세요? (nu-gu-reul chaj-eu-se-yo?) Who are you looking for?
무엇 일을 하세요? (mu-seun il-eul ha-se-yo?) What kind of work do you do?
무엇을 좋아하세요? (mu-eos-eul jo-a-ha-se-yo?) What do you like?
누가 간호원이세요? (nu-ga gan-ho-won-i-se-yo?) Who’s the nurse?
### 7. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>영어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>누가 (nu-ga)</td>
<td>somebody/anybody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누구 (nu-gu)</td>
<td>someone/anyone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무속 (mu-seun)</td>
<td>some/any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뭐 (mwo)</td>
<td>something/anything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무엇 (mu-eot)</td>
<td>something/anything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어느 (eo-neu)</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어떤 (eo-di)</td>
<td>somewhere/anywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이럴게 (eo-teo-ke)</td>
<td>somehow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어떤 (eo-teon)</td>
<td>some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>언제 (eun-je)</td>
<td>sometime/anytime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누구든지 (nu-gu-deun-ji)</td>
<td>whoever/whomever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뭐든지 (mwo-deun-ji)</td>
<td>whatever, anything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무속이든지 (mu-seun i-deun-ji)</td>
<td>whichever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적어 (eo-di-deun-ji)</td>
<td>wherever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어떤이든지 (eo-neu i-deun-ji)</td>
<td>whichever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적어 (eo-di-deun-ji)</td>
<td>wherever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어떤이든지 (eo-neu i-deun-ji)</td>
<td>whichever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적어 (eo-di-deun-ji)</td>
<td>wherever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어떤이든지 (eo-neu i-deun-ji)</td>
<td>whichever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적어 (eo-di-deun-ji)</td>
<td>wherever</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

- **누가** (someone/anyone)
  - 누가 왔어요? (mu-ga wass-eo-yo.)
  - There is someone.

- **누구** (someone/anyone)
  - 누구를 데리고 올 거예요. (nu-gu-reul de-ri-go ol geo-ye-yo.)
  - I am bringing someone.

- **무속** (some/any)
  - 무속 낫새가 나오요. (mu-seun naem-sae-ga na-yo.)
  - I smell something.

- **뭐** (something/anything)
  - 뭐 좀 싫어요. (mwo jom saes-eo-yo.)
  - I bought something.

- **무엇** (original form of 뭐 mwo)
  - (original form of 뭐 mwo)

- **어느** (one)
  - 어느 날 갈지기 귀가 잃어 없어요. (eo-neu-nal gap-ja-gi gwi-ga jal an deul-lyeoss-eo-yo.)
  - One day, all of a sudden, I couldn't hear.

- **어디** (somewhere/anywhere)
  - 어디 좀 가지고 싶어요. (eo-di jom ga-go sip-eo-yo.)
  - I want to go somewhere.

- **어떻게** (somehow)
  - 어떻게 좀 해 보세요. (eo-teo-ke jom hae bo-se-yo)
  - Please do something.

- **어떤** (some)
  - 어떤 사람이 집에 왔어요. (eo-teon sa-ram-i jib-e wass-eo-yo.)
  - Somebody came to our house.

- **언제** (sometime/anytime)
  - 언제 한번 만날까요? (eun-je han-beon man-nal-kka-yo?)
  - Should we meet sometime?

- **누구든지** (whoever/whomever)
  - 저는 뭐든지 다 잘 먹어요. (joe-neun mwo-deun-ji da jal meog-eo-yo.)
  - Whatever the food is, I will eat very well.

- **어떤이든지** (whatever, anything)
  - 한국음식은 어떤이든지 다 좋아해요. (han-gug-eum-sig-eun eo-neu i-deun-ji da jo-a-hac-yo.)
  - I like all Korean food, whichever dish it may be.

- **어디든지** (wherever)
  - 주말에는 어디든지 여행을 가고 싶어요. (ju-mal-e-neun eo-di-deun-ji yeo-haeng-eul ga-go sip-eo-yo.)
  - Wherever the destination may be, I want to travel on weekends.

- **어떻게든지** (no matter what)
  - 어떻게든지 외국에 한번 가고 싶어요. (eo-teo-ke-deun-ji oo-gug-e han-beon ga-go sip-eo-yo.)
  - No matter what, I want to go abroad once.
8. WORD FORMATION

Noun Formation

To form nouns from a verb, add -기 (-gi) or -는 것 (-neun-geot) after the verb stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>걷다</td>
<td>걸기 / 걸는 것</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(geot-da)</td>
<td>(geot-gi) / (geon-neun geot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노래하다</td>
<td>노래하기 / 노래하는 것</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no-rae-ha-da)</td>
<td>(no-rae-ha-gi) / (no-rae-ha-neun geot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노래하기</td>
<td>(no-rae-ha-neun geot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정다</td>
<td>정기 / 정하는 것</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ja-da)</td>
<td>(ja-gi) / (ja-neun geot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수영</td>
<td>수영하기 / 수영하는 것</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(su-yeong)</td>
<td>(su-yeong-ga-gi) / (su-yeong-ga-neun geot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shopping</td>
<td>shopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thinking</td>
<td>to think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>to study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일</td>
<td>일하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(il)</td>
<td>(il-ha-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부</td>
<td>공부하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(gong-bu)</td>
<td>(gong-bu-ha-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>생각</td>
<td>생각하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(saeng-gak)</td>
<td>(saeng-ga-ka-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수영</td>
<td>수영하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(su-yeong)</td>
<td>(su-yeong-ha-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>to swim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Noun Modifier Formation

A construction consisting of a clause with either 는 or (으)로 before a noun is called a relative clause. It is a type of noun-modifying construction. An example would be [hangul/romanization/English]. The key thing to remember about relative clauses in Korean is that they always precede the noun they modify. Korean differs from English in that the clauses are not accompanied by such relative pronouns as who, that, and which.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense / Form</th>
<th>Active Verb</th>
<th>Descriptive</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past / Retrospective (Imperfect)</td>
<td>-(으)ㄴ -(으)ㄹ (ilk-deun/ka-deon) read, went</td>
<td>-(으)ㄴ -(으)ㄹ (jo-teon/ssa-deon) was good, was cheap</td>
<td>-(으)ㄴ -(으)ㄹ (i-da/eop-da) to exist, to not exist</td>
<td>-(으)ㄴ -(으)ㄹ (i-da) to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past / Completed</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (ilk-eun/gan) read, went</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (jo-teon/ssa-deon) was good, was cheap</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (i-da/eop-da) was, wasn’t</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (i-da) was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present / Ongoing</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (ilk-neun/ga-neun) is reading, is going</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (jo-neun/ssan) is good, is cheap</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (i-neun/eom-neun) is, isn’t</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (i-neun) is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future / Unrealized</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (ilk-eul/gal) will read, will go</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (jo-eul/ssal) will be good, will be cheap</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (i-eul/eops-eul) will exist, won’t exist</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ -(으)ㄹ (i-eul) will be</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adverb Formation

To form an adverb from a descriptive verb, add -게 (-ge) after the descriptive verb's stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Descriptive Verb</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>재미있었다</td>
<td>재미있게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(jae-mi-it-da)</td>
<td>(jae-mi-it-ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>interestingly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늦다</td>
<td>늦게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(neut-da)</td>
<td>(neut-ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늦게</td>
<td>lately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바쁘다</td>
<td>바쁘게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba-ppeu-da)</td>
<td>(ba-ppeu-ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늦게</td>
<td>busily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사그 jb 있다</td>
<td>사그럽게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(si-kkeu-reop-da)</td>
<td>(si-kkeu-reop-ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늦게</td>
<td>loudly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. TENSES

Korean verbs have three tenses: present, past, and future. The rules for conjugating them into the tenses appear below. Please note that verbs are conjugated by tense only and not by person.

Present:

verb stem + -아/어요

(-a/yo-yo)

지금 한국에 가요.

(ji-geum han-gug-e ga-yo.)

I am leaving for Korea now.
Past:
verb stem + -았/었어요 (-ass/ess-co-yo)

I went to Korea last year.

Future (probability in the future):
verb stem + -(으)ㄹ (으)로 가요 (-[eu]l kkeo-ye-yo)

I will go to Korea next year.

10. NEGATION OF VERBS

Short-form Negation

안 (an-) don’t

아니요 (an meog-co-yo.)
I don’t eat.

감부 안 해요.
(gong-bu an hae-yo.)
I don’t study.

못 (mot-) can’t

못 먹어요.
(mot meog-co-yo.)
I can’t eat.

많부 못해요.
(Gong-bu mo-tae-yo.)
I can’t study.

Long-form Negation

-지 않다 (-ji anta)

아니요 (meok-ji an-a-yo.)
I don’t eat.

-지 못하다 (-ji mo-ta-da)

아니요 (meok-ji mo-tae-yo.)
I can’t eat.

-지 않다 (request only) (-ji mal-da)

아니요 (meok-ji ma-se-yo)
Please don’t eat it.

Special Negation Words

있다 (it-da) versus 없다 (eop-ta)

있어요 (iss-co-yo)
there is . . .

없어요 (cops-co-yo)
there is not . . .

있다 (i-da) versus 아니다 (a-ni-da)

이에요. (i-e-yo)
it is . . .

아니에요. (a-ni-e-yo)
it is not . . .
11. HONORIFIC EXPRESSIONS

Korean is a language whose honorific patterns are highly systematic. Honorific forms appear in hierarchical address/reference terms and titles, some commonly used nouns and verbs, the pronoun system, particles, and verb suffixes. Sentences in Korean cannot be formed without knowledge of one’s social relationships to the listener or to the one referenced in terms of age, kinship, and social status. Honorific forms are used when a social or familial superior, a distant peer, or a stranger must be referred or spoken to with respect.

### Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I know...</td>
<td>(al-a-yo...)</td>
<td>(yeon-se)</td>
<td>(yeon-se)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't know...</td>
<td>(mol-la-yo...)</td>
<td>(seong-ham)</td>
<td>(seong-ham)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I like...</td>
<td>(jo-a-yo...)</td>
<td>(saeng-il)</td>
<td>(saeng-il)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't like...</td>
<td>(sil-eo-yo...)</td>
<td>(mal)</td>
<td>(mal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s/he likes...</td>
<td>(jo-a-hae-yo...)</td>
<td>(mal-sseum)</td>
<td>(mal-sseum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s/he doesn't like...</td>
<td>(sil-eo-hae-yo...)</td>
<td>(mal-ssum)</td>
<td>(mal-ssum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(daek)</td>
<td>(daek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(jin-ji)</td>
<td>(jin-ji)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(bun)</td>
<td>(bun)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>he/she</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she</td>
<td>이/가/자사람</td>
<td>이/가/자분</td>
<td>(i/geu/jeo-sa-ram)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she</td>
<td>(i/geu/jeo-bun)</td>
<td>(i/geu/jeo-bun)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>나는/내가</td>
<td>저는/제가</td>
<td>(na-neun/nac-ga)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>(joe-neun/jo-ga)</td>
<td>(joe-neun/jo-ga)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>내</td>
<td>제</td>
<td>(nae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>(joe)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>우리</td>
<td>저희</td>
<td>(u-ri)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>(joe-hui)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>see/meet</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>see/meet</td>
<td>보다/만나다</td>
<td>보시다/ 만나시다</td>
<td>빼다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be/exist/stay</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be/exist/stay</td>
<td>있다</td>
<td>게시다</td>
<td>(it-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/exist/stay</td>
<td>(gye-si-da)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| die       | 죽다       | 돌아가시다   | (juk-da)   |
| die       | (dol-a-ga-si-da) |             |            |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be well/fine</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
<th>Humble</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be well/fine</td>
<td>잘 있다</td>
<td>안녕하시다</td>
<td>(jul ii-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be well/fine</td>
<td>(an-nyeong-ha-si-da)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| sleep     | 자다       | 주무시다     | (ja-da)    |
| sleep     | (ju-mu-si-da) |             |            |

| eat        | 먹다       | 드시다/접수시다 | (meok-da) |
| eat        | deu-si-da/jap-su-si-da |             |            |

| give       | 주다       | 주시다       | (ju-da)    |
| give       | (ju-si-da) | deu-ri-da   |            |

| speak      | 말하다     | 말씀하시다   | (mal-ha-da) |
| speak      | 말씀드리다 | (mal-sseum-ha-si-da) | (mal-sseum-deu-ri-da) |

Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar

12. Irregular Verbs

In Korean, there are verbs that change their final sound before a suffix that begins with a certain sound. These verbs are commonly called irregular and are nine types, as shown below.

- Irregular Verbs
- Irregular verbs are those whose stem-final = becomes ≡ before a vowel, as in 듣는다 (deul-neun-da) to listen, which becomes 들어요 (deul-eo-yo). Other examples:

  to ask: 들는다 (mut-neun-da) → 들어요 (mul-eo-yo)
  to walk: 걷는다 (geot-neun-da) → 걸어요 (geol-eo-yo)

- Irregular Verbs
- Irregular verbs are those whose final ≡ sound becomes 우 before a vowel, as in 가깝다 (ga-kkap-da) to be close, which becomes 가까워요 (ga-kka-wo-yo). Other examples:

  to be cold: 쌓다 (chup-da) → 추워요 (chu-wo-yo)
  to be difficult: 어렵다 (eo-reop-da) → 어려워요 (eo-ryeo-wo-yo)
  to be easy: 쉽다 (swip-da) → 쉬워요 (swi-wo-yo)
to be heavy: 무겁다 (mu-geop-da)  ➔ 무거워요 (mu-geo-wo-yo)
to be hot: 닫다 (deop-da)  ➔ 더워요 (deo-wo-yo)

~irregular Verbs
~irregular verbs are those whose final ~ is deleted before a vowel, such as 쓰는다 (jit-neun-da) vs. 쓰어요 (jit-eo-yo) “to build,” 붓는다 (but-neun-da) vs. 붓어요 (bu-eo-yo) “to pour,” 지어요 (jeo-eo-yo) “to stir,” and 얻는다 (it-neun-da) vs. 이어요 (i-eo-yo) “to connect.”

~irregular verbs are those whose final ~ is deleted before another vowel. All ~ final verbs follow this pattern, such as 쓰다 (sseu-da) vs. 쓰어요 (sseu-yeo) “to write,” 바쁘다 (ba-ppeu-da) vs. 바빠요 (ba-ppa-yo) “to be busy,” 크다 (keu-da) vs. 크요 (keo-yo) “to be big,” 예쁘다 (ye-ppeu-da) vs. 예뻐요 (ye-ppeo-yo) “to be pretty,” 나쁘다 (na-ppeu-da) vs. 나빠요 (na-ppa-yo) “to be bad,” and 아프다 (a-peu-da) vs. 아파요 (a-pa-yo) “to be sick.”

~irregular Verbs
~irregular verbs are those whose stem-final ~ is deleted before the consonants ~, ~, or ~, such as 말아요 (mal-a-yo) vs. 마세요 (ma-se-yo) “to know,” 놀아요 (nol-a-yo) vs. 놀니다 (nol-ni-da) “to play,” and 들어요 (dol-a-yo) vs. 도니까 (do-ni-kka) “to turn.” All ~ final verbs follow this pattern.

~irregular Verbs
~irregular verbs are those whose final ~ is deleted before a nasal consonant (~, ~, or ~) and a vowel. They may undergo further phonological change with the following vowel, such as 빨갛다 (ppal-ga-ta) “to be red” vs. 빨간 ppal-gan “red,” 하얗다 (ha-ya-ta) “to be white” vs. 하얗니가 (ha-yani-kka) “because it is white,” and 파랗다 (pa-ra-ta) “to be blue” vs. 파랗면 (pa-ra-myeon) “if it is blue.” The verbs 노랗다 (no-ru-ta), 까맣다 (kkam-ma-ta), 어둡다 (i-reo-ta), 그리고 (geu-reo-ta), 저렇다 (jeo-reo-ta), and 어둡다 (eo-teo-ta) also follow this pattern.

13. PASSIVE VERBS

Active | Passive
---|---
보다 | 보이다 (bo-da) (bo-i-da)
to see | to be seen
(주기 신호등이 보여요.
(jeo-gi sin-ho-deung-i)
I see the traffic light
over there.

쓰다 | 쓰이다 (sseu-da) (sseu-i-da)
to use | to be used
(이 악기가 감기에 잘 쓰여요.
(i-yag-i gam-gi-e jal
sseu-yeo-yo.)
This medicine is often used
for colds.

닫다 | 닫히다 (dat-da) (da-chi-da)
to close | to be closed
(바람에 문이 닫혔어요.
(ba-ram-e mun-i
da-chyeoss-eo-yo.)
The door was closed by
the wind.)
Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar

14. CAUSATIVE VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Causative</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>안하다</td>
<td>아이가 염마에게 입었어요. (a-i-ga eom-ma-ge-te an-gyeoss-ee-yo.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(mek-da)</td>
<td>(an-tta)</td>
<td>The baby was being held by the mother.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹이지</td>
<td>(meog-i-da)</td>
<td>to feed someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to eat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽다</td>
<td>(juk-da)</td>
<td>제가 파리를 죽였어요. (je-ga pa-ri-reul jug-yeoss-ee-yo.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(kkeul-ta)</td>
<td>(kkneul-i-da)</td>
<td>I killed the fly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽이지</td>
<td>to kill someone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>버다</td>
<td>(ip-da)</td>
<td>(i-pi-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ppaet-da)</td>
<td>(ppaet-gi-da)</td>
<td>야마가 아기한테 못을 입혀요. (eom-ma-ge-te an-gi-han-te os-eul i-pyeo-yo.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to take away</td>
<td>to be taken away</td>
<td>The mother is dressing the baby.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar

#### 15. CONNECTIVES

**Noun Connectives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>빼다 (beot-da)</td>
<td>to take off</td>
<td>The mother is undressing the baby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쫓다 (ttae-mun-e)</td>
<td>because of</td>
<td>because of the accident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쫓다 (ut-da)</td>
<td>to laugh</td>
<td>The older brother makes his younger sibling laugh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빼다 (beot-gi-da)</td>
<td>to undress someone</td>
<td>The mother is undressing the baby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쫓다 (ttae-chi-da)</td>
<td>to laugh</td>
<td>The older brother makes his younger sibling laugh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Example sentences:

- The mother is laying the baby down on the bed.
- The mother is putting shoes on the baby.
- The mother is seating the baby on the chair.
- The mother is putting the baby to sleep on the bed.
- The mother wakes up the baby in the morning.
- I burned the fish by mistake.
- The older brother makes his younger sibling cry.
- The older brother makes his younger sibling laugh.
-한금
(-man-keum)
as much as
(dong-saeng-i hyeong-man-keum ki-ga keo-yo.)
The younger sibling is as tall as the older brother.

-말고
(-mal-go)
not [X]; instead
(yuk-gae-jang mal-go bul-go-gi-reul deu-se-yo.)
Eat bulgogi instead of yuk-gae-jang.

-와
(used after a consonant)
(-wa)
with, and
-ui-ja-wa chaek-sang-eul sass-eo-yo.)
I bought a desk and a chair.

-이나
(used after a consonant)
(-i-na)
and (colloquial)
(sin-mun-i-na chaeg-cul ilg-eo-yo.)
I read a newspaper or a book.

-나
(used after a vowel)
(-na)
or
(keo-pi-na cha-reul ma-syeo-yo.)
I drink a coffee or a tea.

-이랑
(used after a consonant)
(-i-rang)
with, and (colloquial)
(chaeck-sang-i-rang ui-ja-reul sass-co-yo.)
I bought a desk and a chair.

-랑
(used after a vowel)
(-na)
with, and (colloquial)
(chin-gu-rang eum-ag-eul deul-co-yo.)
I listen to music with my friend.

-하고
(-ha-go)
책상하고 의자를 섞어요.
(chaeck-sang-ha-go ui-ja-reul sass-eo-yo.)
I bought a desk and a chair.

Clausal Connectives

-거나
(-geo-na)
or
(ju-mal-e yeong-hwa-reul bo-geo-na syo-ping-eul hae-yo.)
I usually watch a movie or go shopping on weekends.

-게
(-ge)
in order that; to
(sa-jin jom jik-ge sa-jin-gi jom bil-lyeo ju-se-yo.)
Can I borrow your camera to take some pictures?

-고
(-go)
아파트가 조용하고 깨끗해요.
(a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-ha-go kkae-kkeu-tae-yo.)
The apartment is quiet and clean.

-고 나서
(-go na-seo)
and
(jeon-sim meok-go na-seo gong-won-e gass-co-yo.)
We went to a park after we ate lunch.

-기 때문에
(-gi tae-mun-e)
because
(nal-si-ga na-ppeu-gi ttae-mun-e bak-e an na-gass-co-yo.)
We didn't go outside because the weather was bad.
BEGINNER’S KOREAN

In order to I came to Korea to learn Korean.

Before I went to the park before lunch.

As a result of...ing; because of Because of the Internet, I did not watch TV.

On one’s way On my way to the post office, I stopped by the market.

During; while While I do laundry I read the newspaper.

As a result of; because Because I fell, I hurt myself.

What do you need in order to make kimchi-jii-gae [Korean dish]?

Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar

(...da-ga) while doing something

(...-neun ba-rai as a result of; because)

(...-da-ga) while doing something

(...-a/eo ga-jii-go) By learning Korean, I will be able to work in Korea.

(.../neom-e-ji-neun ba-ram-e da-cheoss-eo-yo.)

(...-at/-eot-da-ga) speaker’s past experience

(...-at/-eot-da-ga) speaker’s past experience

(...-a/eo ga-jii-go) By learning Korean, I will be able to work in Korea.

(...-a/eo ga-jii-go) By learning Korean, I will be able to work in Korea.

(.../neom-e-ji-neun ba-ram-e da-cheoss-eo-yo.)
The more... the more...
The more you see of this movie, the more you will like it.

He/she is driving an expensive car even though he/she does not have money.

I went to the park after I had lunch.

I am not sure if these shoes will fit my younger brother/sister.

The apartment is quiet but not clean.
-이러면
(-i-ra-myeon)

if it is...

-이러서
(-i-ra-seo)

because; since

-자마자
(-ja-ma-ja)

as soon as

-지만
(-ji-man)

but

아무...-이(아)나
(a-mu...-[i]-na)

any

아무리...-아(어)도
(a-mu-ri...-[a/-e]-do)

no matter how

내가 만일 부자라면 좋은 차를 사겠다.
(nae-ga man-il bu-ja-ra-myeon jo-eun cha-reul sa-get-da.)

If I were rich I would buy a good car.

오늘은 일요일이라서 학교에 안 가요.
(o-neul-eun il-yo-il-ia-ra-seo hak-gyo-e an ga-yo.)

I am not going to school today since it is Sunday.

아침에 일어나자마자 화장실에 가요.
(a-chim-e il-eo-na-ja-ma-ja hwa-jang-sil-e ga-yo.)

I go to the bathroom as soon as I get up in the morning.

아파트가 조용하지만 안 깨끗해요.
(a-pa-teu-ga jo-yong-ha-ji-man an kkaeuk-keu-tae-yo.)

The apartment is quiet but not clean.

저는 아무 음식이나 다 잘 먹어요.
(jeo-neun a-mu eum-sig-i-na da jal meog-eo-yo.)

I can eat any kind of food.

아무리 가다듬도 택시가 안 와요.
(a-mu-ri gi-da-ryeo-do taek-si-ga an wa-yo.)

No matter how long I wait for the taxi, it's not coming.
Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar

16. SENTENCE ENDINGS & HELPING VERBS

- 거든요 (-geo-deun-yo)
  you see, because

  - 게 되다 (-ge doe-da)
    a change of events

  - 게 하다 (-ge ha-da)
    make someone/something

  - 게 요 (-ge-yo)
    intend to

  - 갔습니다 (-get-seum-ni-da)
    announcement

  - 고 싶다/싶어하다 (-go sip-da/sip-eo-ha-da)
    want to

  - 고 있다/게시하다 (-go it-da)/(-gye-si-da)
    progressive

- 지난 주에 비자를 받았거든요. (ji-nan ju-e bi-ja-reul)
  You see, I got my visa last week.

- 한국을 좋아하게 됐어요. (han-gug-eul jo-a-ha-ge)
  I came to like Korea.

- 아이들이 방에 못 들어오게 해 주세요. (a-i-deul-i bang-e mot deul-eo-o-ge)
  Please make the children stay out of the room.

- 지금 소심하게요. (ji-geum cheong-so-ha-ge-yo)
  I am going to clean now.

  I will tell you today’s weather.

- 갈비를 먹고 싶어요. (-고 싶다 [first person only])
  I want to eat galbi [Korean dish].

- 지금 먹고 있어요. (-고 계시다 [honorific])
  She is eating right now.
I don't want to ride the bus. (han-gug-eo-reul bae-u-gi si-ga-kasse-yo.)
I began to learn Korean. (beo-seu ta-gi sil-eo-yo.)
It is inconvenient to ride the bus. (beo-seu ta-gi-ga bul-pyeon-hae-yo.)
It is easy to ride the bus. (beo-seu ta-gi-ga swi-wo-yo.)
It is difficult to ride the bus. (beo-seu ta-gi-ga pyeon-hae-yo.)
I slept a lot, but I am still sleepy. (man-i ja-gi-neun han-neun-de a-jik-do jol-lyeo-yo.)
I heard you are going to Korea. (han-gug-e gan-da-myeon-seo-yo?)
I heard s/he is going to the zoo. (dong-mul-won-e gan-dae-yo.)
BEGINNER’S KOREAN

416

Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar

마이클 조던이 점말 농구를 잘 하더라고
(Maikkle jodeunjeon jigmal nonggu-reul jahadarego.)

Michael Jordan plays basketball very well, in my experience.

호텔 식당 음식이 아주 맛있는데요.
(Hotell sikdang eum-sig-i aju mas-it-deon-de-yo.)
The food at the hotel restaurant was delicious, in my experience.

حمدلال 12개 값이 있어요.
(Han sang-ja-e sa-gwa-ga yeol-kkae deul-eo iss-eo-yo.)

There are ten apples in a box.

The cake looks delicious.
(Kee-i-keu meog-eo-do dwae-yo.)

The cake looks delicious.

żeka ta bon jecti eyeoryo.
(seu-ki ta bon jeog-i eops-eo-yo.)

I have never skied before.

스키 타 본 적이 있어요.
(seu-ki ta bon jeog-i iss-eo-yo.)

I have skied before.

한 상자에 시과가 10개 들어 있어요.
(Han sang-ja-e sa-gwa-ga yeol-kkae deul-eo iss-eo-yo.)

There are ten apples in a box.

의 케이크 맛이도 되용요?
(I ke-i-keu meog-eo-do dwae-yo.)

May I eat this cake?

매일 운동해야 되용요.
(Mae-il un-dong-ya-ya dwae-yo.)

One needs to exercise every day.

피곤한데 일찍 자야지요.
(Pi-gon-han-de il-jik ja-ya-ji-yo.)

You must be tired. You should go to sleep early.

سأل منكذب 모르겠어요.
(Mwol sa-ya-hal-jii mo-reu-get-da)

I don't know-[Qword] to

별 사작할지 모르겠어요.
(Mwol sa-ya-hal-jii mo-reu-gess-eo-yo.)

I don't know what to buy.

달씨가 추워졌어요.
(Nal-si-ga chu-wo-jeoss-eo-yo.)

The weather became cold.

All I need to buy is an airplane ticket.
(Dong-mul-won-e ga-rae-yo.)

Somebody told me to go to the zoo.

I have never skied before.

Please explain to me again.
(Da-si seol-myeong-hae ju-se-yo.)

I have skied before.

Married couple (humble)
(Da-si seol-myeong-hae ju-se-yo.)

Please explain to me again.

I have never skied before.

Please explain to me again.
(Da-si seol-myeong-hae ju-se-yo.)

Please explain to me again.
Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar

- 음/은 편이다
(-eun)/(-neun pyeon-i-da)
relatively

- 음/은/은 것 같다
(-eun)/(-neun)/(-eul gat-da)
it seems/looks like

- 음/은/은 모양이다
(-eun)/(-neun)/(-eul yo-ye-yo)
the fact is

- 음/은/은 줄 알다
(-eun)/(-neun jul al-da)
I thought.

- 음/은/은 하다
(-a)/(-eo-ha-da)
feeling of the third person

- 음/은/은 하다
(-ass)/(-eoss-eu-myeon ha-da)
wish

- 음/은/은 하다
([eul]-ryeo-go ha-da)
intend to

- 음/은/은 안 되다
([eul]-myeon an doe-da)
prohibition

- 음/은/은 모양이다
(-eun)/(-neun)/(-eul yo-ye-yo)
the fact is

- 음/은/은 줄 알다
(-eun)/(-neun jul al-da)
I thought.

- 음/은/은 하다
(-a)/(-eo-ha-da)
feeling of the third person

- 음/은/은 하다
(-ass)/(-eoss-eu-myeon ha-da)
wish

- 음/은/은 하다
([eul]-ryeo-go ha-da)
intend to

- 음/은/은 안 되다
([eul]-myeon an doe-da)
prohibition

- 음/은/은 모양이다
(-eun)/(-neun)/(-eul yo-ye-yo)
the fact is

- 음/은/은 줄 알다
(-eun)/(-neun jul al-da)
I thought.

- 음/은/은 하다
(-a)/(-eo-ha-da)
feeling of the third person

- 음/은/은 하다
(-ass)/(-eoss-eu-myeon ha-da)
wish

- 음/은/은 하다
([eul]-ryeo-go ha-da)
intend to

- 음/은/은 안 되다
([eul]-myeon an doe-da)
prohibition

- 음/은/은 모양이다
(-eun)/(-neun)/(-eul yo-ye-yo)
the fact is

- 음/은/은 줄 알다
(-eun)/(-neun jul al-da)
I thought.

- 음/은/은 하다
(-a)/(-eo-ha-da)
feeling of the third person

- 음/은/은 하다
(-ass)/(-eoss-eu-myeon ha-da)
wish

- 음/은/은 하다
([eul]-ryeo-go ha-da)
intend to

- 음/은/은 안 되다
([eul]-myeon an doe-da)
prohibition

- 음/은/은 모양이다
(-eun)/(-neun)/(-eul yo-ye-yo)
the fact is

- 음/은/은 줄 알다
(-eun)/(-neun jul al-da)
I thought.
It has been one year since I came to Korea.
Appendix 1: A Brief Korean Grammar

17. INDIRECT QUOTATION

Standard Form (Colloquial Form)

Statement:
- 년 날씨고 해요 (-년 날씨고)
(-년/-날씨고 하세요 (-년/-날씨고))

밥을 먹는다고 해요. / 밥을 먹는다고.
(bab-eul meong-neun-da-go hae-yo.) / (bab-eul meong-neun-dae-yo.)
Someone said (he/she) is eating.

- 라고 해요 (-라고)
(-라고 하세요 (-라고))

의사라고 해요. / 의사라고.
(ui-sa-ra-go hae-yo.) / (ui-sa-rae-yo.)
Someone said (he/she) is a doctor.

Question:
- 날씨고 해요 (-내요)
(-내요/내해요 [-내요])

밥을 먹나고 해요. / 밥을 먹나고.
(bab-eul meong-nya-go hae-yo.) / (bab-eul meong-nyae-yo.)
Someone asked if (he/she) is eating.

Proposal:
- 자고 해요 (-재요)
(-재요/재해요 [-재요])

밥을 먹자고 해요. / 밥을 먹자고.
(bab-eul meok-ja-go hae-yo.) / (bab-eul meok-jae-yo.)
Someone said let's eat.
Request:
-(으)라고 해요 / -(으)래요
([eu]-ra-go hae-yo)/([eu]-rae-yo)

받을 맛으라고 해요. / 받을 맛으래요.
(bab-eul meog-eul-ra-go hae-yo.) / (bab-eul meog-eul-rae-yo.)
Someone told me to eat.

Appendix 2:
Korean-English Vocabulary
가계 ga-ge
가격 ga-gyeok
가깝다 ga-kkap-da
가는 머리 ga-neun meo-ri
가다 ga-da
가루와 ga-ru-yak
가수 ga-su
가슴 ga-seum
가운데 ga-un-de
가늘 ga-eul
가족 ga-jok

가지고 오다 ga-ji-go o-da
가지고 떠나다 ga-ji-go ta-da
가져다 ga-jia-da
간호사 gan-ho-sa
간호원 gan-ho-won
갈색 gal-saek
갈아타는 곳 gal-a-ta-neun got
갈아타다 gal-a-ta-da
걸기 gam-gi
걸기에 끼리다 gam-gi-e geol-li-da
걸사하다 gam-sa-ha-da
갖다 드리다 gat-da deu-ri-da
갖다 주다 gat-da ju-da
 gall다 gat-da
가이 ga-chi
개 gae
거기 geo-gi
거스름돈 geo-seum-ton
거의 geo-ui
객창하다 geok-jeong-ha-da
건너다 geon-neo-da

store, shop,
convenient store
price
to be close
thin hair
to go
powdered medicine
singer
chest/breast
middle
fall, autumn
family, family
members
(formal)
to bring something
to ride having
something
to have
nurse
nurse
light brown
subway transfer
place
to transfer
cold
to have a cold
to thank
to bring or take
something (hon.)
to bring or take
something
to be same
together
items
there
change
almost
to worry
to cross (a street)

Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

건너편 geon-neo-pyeon
건물 geon-mul
건축학 geon-chuk-hak
걸다 geot-da
걸리다 geol-li-da
 걸어서 geol-eo-seo
검사하다 geon-sa-reul ha-da
개념 ge-i-teu
거들 geo-wul
거자색 geo-ja-saek
걸_abort하다 gyeol-hon-ha-da
걸치다 gyeop-chi-da
경영학 gyeong-yeong-hak
경제학 gyeong-je-hak
경찰 gyeong-chal
경찰서 gyeong-chal-sseo
계산서 gye-san-seo
계시다 gye-si-da
고등학교 go-deung-hak-go
고등학생 go-deung-ha-saeng
고발다 go-map-da
고모 go-mo
고모부 go-mo-bu
고생 go-saeng
고속버스 go-sok-beo-seu
고잡니다 go-jang-na-da
골프 치다 gol-pu-reul chi-da
골슬머리 gop-seul meo-ri
공대학 (공대) gong-kkwa-dac-hak (gong-dae)
공무원 gong-mu-won
공복에 gong-bog-e

공사 중 gong-sa-jung
공제하다 gong-je-ha-da
공학 gong-hak

across the street
building
architecture
to walk
to take time
on foot, by walking
to get an exam
gate
winter
dark yellow, mustard
color
to get married
to be overlapped
business
management
economics
police
police department,
police station
check, bill
to exist, to be, to
stay (hon.)
high school
high school student
to thank
aunt (father’s sister)
uncle (father’s husband)
hard work
express bus
to be broken
to play golf
curly hair
engineering school
civil servant
on an empty
stomach
on the construction site
to deduct
engineering
Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

그럼 geu-reom
그럼요 geu-reom-yo
그렇게 geu-reo-ke
그럼쿠나 geu-reo-ku-na
그럼다 geu-reo-ru
그럼지만 geu-reo-chi-man
그리고 geu-ri-go
그룹을 그리다 geu-rim-cul geu-ri-da
그지께 geu-jeo-kke
그제 geu-je
근무하다 geun-mu-ha-da
근처 geun-cheo
근년 geum-nyeon
급방 geum-bang
급요일 geum-yo-il
급하다 geu-pa-da
급히 geu-pi
기다리다 gi-da-ri-da
기쁘다 gi-ppeu-da
가사 gi-sa
가스가 날다 gi-on-i nat-da
가스가 높다 gi-on-i nop-da
가스가 없다 gi-un-i eop-da
가스가 없다 gi-un-i eop-da
기자 gi-ja
기차 gi-cha
기침을 하다 gi-chim-eul ha-da
기타 gi-ta-reul chi-da
긴 머리 gin meo-ri
길 gil
길다 gil-da
길이 gil-i
검지 gim-chi
까만 kka-man

then
of course
like that
that's right
to be so
but
and
to draw a picture
draw a picture
draw a picture
the day before
yesterday
the day before
yesterday
to work at (company name)
near, nearby
this year
soon
Friday
in a hurry
to wait
to be happy
driver
the temperature is low
the temperature is high
to be lacking in
energy
to have no energy
journalist
train
to cough
to play guitar
long hair
street, road
to be long
length
kimchi
black
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>까만색 kka-man-saek</td>
<td>black color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깨알다 kka-ma-ta</td>
<td>to be black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깨다 kka-da</td>
<td>to have a haircut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깡짹 kkam-ppak</td>
<td>completely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깨끗하다 kkae-kkeu-ta-da</td>
<td>to be clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깨우다 kkae-u-da</td>
<td>to wake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깨우다 kkae-u-da</td>
<td>to wake someone up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꼬꼬 kkok</td>
<td>for sure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꼬다 kkaot-da</td>
<td>to wear (a pin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꼬다 kkaot-da</td>
<td>flower pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꼬다 kkaot-da</td>
<td>flower shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꼬다 kkaot-da</td>
<td>to untie, to loose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꼬다 kkaot-da</td>
<td>to be humid, sticky, muggy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꼬다 kkeul-ta</td>
<td>to boil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꼬다 kkeul-ta</td>
<td>to boil something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꼬다 kkeul-ta</td>
<td>to wear (a ring, gloves, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나 na</td>
<td>I, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나가는 곳 na-ga-neun got</td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나가다 na-ga-da</td>
<td>to go out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나오다 na-o-da</td>
<td>to come out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나이 na-i</td>
<td>age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나이가 많다 na-i-ga man-ta</td>
<td>to be old (person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나이드신 분들 na-i-deu-sin bun-deul</td>
<td>old people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나중에 na-jung-e</td>
<td>later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나타나다 na-ta-na-da</td>
<td>to appear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나흘 na-heul</td>
<td>4 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낭시를 가다/하다 nak-si-reul ga-da/ha-da</td>
<td>to go fishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나은 nal</td>
<td>day, date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>난씨 nal-ssi</td>
<td>weather, climate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>난씨가 나쁘다 nal-ssi-ga na-ppeu-da</td>
<td>the weather is bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>난씨가 좋다 nal-ssi-ga jo-ta</td>
<td>the weather is good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>난다 nalk-da</td>
<td>to be old (object)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>난다 nalk-da</td>
<td>to leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>난다 nalk-da</td>
<td>younger brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>난다 nalk-da</td>
<td>other people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>난다 nalk-da</td>
<td>tennis/golf shirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>남자 nam-ja</td>
<td>man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>남편 nam-pyeon</td>
<td>husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to be better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to be low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to make something low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>internal department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>next year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to go down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to come down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>the year after next year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>cold noodle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>ice water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>ice coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>too, too much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to go over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to put inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to put on something (for someone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>necktie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>yellow color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to be yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to sing a song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to go to a karaoke room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>things for old people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to play for someone's benefit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to play basketball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>to be high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮다 nat-da</td>
<td>someone/anyone, who (subject)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Word</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누구 nu-gu</td>
<td>someone/anyone, who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누나 nu-na</td>
<td>man's older sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>놓 nun</td>
<td>snow, eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈이 오다 nun-i o-da</td>
<td>to snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈다 nup-da</td>
<td>to lay down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈히다 nu-pi-da</td>
<td>to lay someone down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈질랜드 nyu-jil-laen-deu</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈질랜드 사람 nyu-jil-laen-deu sa-ram</td>
<td>New Zealander</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈질랜드인 nyu-jil-laen-deu-in</td>
<td>to be old (person or animal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈게 nut-ge</td>
<td>late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈다 neut-da</td>
<td>to be late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈여도 muj-co-do</td>
<td>at latest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다 da</td>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다 같이 da ga-chi</td>
<td>all together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다 되다 da doe-da</td>
<td>to be all done, to worn out, to be all done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다니다 da-ni-da</td>
<td>to attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다음 da-deul</td>
<td>everyone, all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다음에 da-deum-eo ju-da</td>
<td>to trim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다른 te da-reun de</td>
<td>other places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다리 da-ri</td>
<td>leg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다림질하다 da-rim-jil-ha-da</td>
<td>to iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다방 da-bang,</td>
<td>café, coffee shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯 da-seot</td>
<td>five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다시 da-si</td>
<td>again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다음 달 da-eum-tal</td>
<td>next month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다음 번 da-eum-beon</td>
<td>next time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다음 주 da-eum-jju</td>
<td>next week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다음에 da-eum-e</td>
<td>next time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다치다 da-chi-da</td>
<td>to get injured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다형이다 da-haeng-i-da</td>
<td>to be lucky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단골 dan-gol</td>
<td>regular customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단골이 되다 dan-gol-i doe-da</td>
<td>to become a regular customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단발머리 dan-bal meo-ri</td>
<td>shoulder-length hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단지 dan-ji</td>
<td>apartment complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달다 dat-da</td>
<td>to close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달히다 da-chi-da</td>
<td>to be closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달 dal</td>
<td>months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달다 dal-da</td>
<td>to be sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달리 dal-leo</td>
<td>dollars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달리담 dal-leo-dang</td>
<td>per dollar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달고기 dak-go-gi</td>
<td>chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달달한 달 dap-dap-hae bo-i-da</td>
<td>to look heavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달달할을 달다 dap-jang-eul sseu-da</td>
<td>to write a reply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달세 tat-sae</td>
<td>5 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달머리 dace-meo-ri</td>
<td>bald</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대중 dace-chung</td>
<td>roughly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학 dace-hak</td>
<td>college</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학교 dace-hak-gyo</td>
<td>college, university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학도 dace-hang-no</td>
<td>university street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학생 dace-hak-saeng</td>
<td>college student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학원 dace-hag-won</td>
<td>graduate school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학원생 dace-hag-won-saeng</td>
<td>graduate student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대한민 dace-han-cun-haeng</td>
<td>Dae-Han Bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닭 dack</td>
<td>home, house (hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더 deo</td>
<td>more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더운 날 deo-un nal</td>
<td>hot day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더워지다 deo-wo-ji-da</td>
<td>to become hot, to get hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>덕분에 deok-bun-e</td>
<td>thanks to (you)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달다 deop-da</td>
<td>to be hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대리고 오다/가다 de-ri-go o-da/ga-da</td>
<td>to bring/take (someone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도와 드리다 do-wa deu-ri-da</td>
<td>to help (hon.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도와주다 do-wa-ju-da</td>
<td>to help for someone's benefit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도장 do-jang</td>
<td>stamp, seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도착하다 do-cha-ka-da</td>
<td>to arrive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독일 dog-il</td>
<td>Germany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독일 사람 dog-il-ssa-ram</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독일어 dog-il-eo</td>
<td>German language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독일인 dog-il-in</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독하다 do-ka-da</td>
<td>to be strong, to be severe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>돈</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돈을</td>
<td>to win money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물</td>
<td>to save money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물을</td>
<td>to receive money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>버리다</td>
<td>to earn money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내다</td>
<td>to send money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내</td>
<td>to spend money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드릴</td>
<td>to lose money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드리다</td>
<td>to misplace money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드려</td>
<td>to give money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드려서</td>
<td>to find money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드려면</td>
<td>to withdraw money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드려면</td>
<td>to need money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드려면</td>
<td>to turn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러</td>
<td>to pass away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러다</td>
<td>same age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>village, town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>younger sibling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>Asian studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>alumni assembly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>designer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>to be warm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>to follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>ring ring...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>telephone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>to sweat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>to be same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>straight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>to go straight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내드러라</td>
<td>by running</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아</td>
<td>Russia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아 사람</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에</td>
<td>Russian language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에</td>
<td>to play wrestling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에</td>
<td>layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에</td>
<td>to layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에</td>
<td>rental car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에</td>
<td>to rinse out, to wash out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에드</td>
<td>counter for animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에드</td>
<td>something to drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에드</td>
<td>mouthwash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에드</td>
<td>to like, to fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에드</td>
<td>someone's taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에드</td>
<td>to not like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에드</td>
<td>mile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>러시아에드</td>
<td>mileage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

마지막으로 ma-ji-mag-eu-ro
마침 ma-chim
마흔 ma-heun
막다 mak-da
마디 ma-ki-da
만 man
만나 범다 man-na-boep-da
만나다 man-na-da
만들다 man-deul-da
많다 man-ta
 많이 man-i
말 mal
말리다 mal-li-da
말씀 mal-sseum
말씀 드리다 mal-sseum deu-ri-da
말씀하시다 mal-sseum-ha-si-da
말하다 mal-ha-da
많아지다 malg-a-ji-da
많이 없다 mas-i eop-da
많이 있다 mas-i it-da
많은가 mas-it-ge
많다 mass-it-da
많다 mat-da
맞추다 mat-chu-da

매년 mae-nyeon
매대 mae-da
매월 mae-wol
매일 mae-il
매주 mae-ju
매주 maeck-ju
WithEmailAndPassword maeck-da
כתב시 맹지 않게 maej-ji an-ke
미리 meo-ri
미리 감다 meo-ri gam-tta
미리 걸 meo-ri kkyeol
미리 술 meo-ri sut

마리아 아프다 meo-ri-ga a-peu-da
마리를 감다 meo-ri-reul gam-tta
마리를 막다 meo-ri-reul kkak-da
마리를 다음 meo-ri-reul daeum-tta
마리를 말하다 meo-ri-reul mal-li-da
마리를 빠다 meo-ri-reul bit-da
마를 자르다 meo-ri-reul ja-reu-da
마리를 행구다 meo-ri-reul heng-gu-da

마리색깔 meo-ri-saek-kkal
마리린 meo-ri-pin
먹는 약 meong-neun nyak
먹다 meok-da
먹이 뽑다 meog-ee bo-da
먹이다 meog-i-da
먼저 meon-jeo
델리 meol-da
메뉴 me-nyu
메시지 me-se-ji
멕시코 mek-si-ko
멕시코사람 mek-si-ko sa-ram
멕시코인 mek-si-ko-in
며느리 myeo-neu-ri
며칠 myeo-chil

영 meong
먹 myeot
먹 가치 myeot ga-ji
먹 게 myeot-gae
먹 논생 myeon-nyeon-saeng
먹 번째 myeot-beon-jjae
먹 시 myeot-si
먹 시점 myeot-si-jjeum

at last
just in time
forty
to block
to be blocked, to be jammed
10 thousand
to meet (hon.)
to meet
to make
to be many
dry
a lot
word, language
to talk to (someone)
one
word (hon.)
to speak (hon.)
to speak
to become clean
to not be delicious
to be delicious
tastily
to be tasty
to be correct, to fit
to fit, to set, to adjust, to make
something fit
every year
to tie
every month
every day
every week
bear
to be spicy/hot
to not be hot
head, hair
to wash hair
quality of hair
volume of hair
to have headache
to wash one’s hair,
to shampoo
to have a haircut
(man)
to trim hair
to have a towel dry
to brush hair
to have a haircut
(woman)
to rinse out, to wash out
hair color
hairpin
pills
to eat
to try to eat
to feed someone
ahead, first
to be far
menu
message
Mexico
Mexican
daughter-in-law
several days, what date?
persons
what
a couple of, several
which year of being born?
what is the order [of something]?
what time?
approximately what time?
elry myeot-jae

(used when asked about the order among siblings)
모두 mo-du
모레 mo-re
모르다 mo-reu-da
모세다 듯리다 mo-syeo-da deu-ri-da
모시고 가다 mo-si-go ga-da
모시고 오다 mo-si-go o-da
모시다 mo-si-da
모양 mo-yang
모지 mo-ja
모국 mok
모갈기에 걸리다 mok-gam-gi-e geol-li-da
모두리 mok-do-ri
모사 mok-sa
모요일 mok-yo-il
모욕을 하다 mok-yog-eul ha-da
모이 먹다 mok-i ma-reu-da
모이 봄다 mok-i but-da
못 보다 mot bo-da
우난하다 mu-nan-ha-da
우단황단을 하다 mu-dan hoeng-dan-eul ha-da to
우븐 mu-reup
우섭다 mu-seop-da
우스/펄를 바르다 mu-seu/jel-li-reul ba-reu-da
무슨 mu-seun
무슨 날 mu-seun nal
무슨 요일 mu-seun yo-il
무엇 nu-eot
문학 mun-hak

what is the version/episode/sequence of something?
what is the order of something.
all
the day after
tomorrow
not to know
to take someone (hon.)
to bring someone (hon.)
to bring someone (hon.)
to take care (hon.)
shape
hat
throat, neck
muffler/scarf
pastor
Thursday
to take a bath
to be thirsty
to have a sore throat
not to see
to be decent
jaywalk
knee
to be scared/afraid
to put on hair
mousse/gel
some kind of, what
kind of, what
special day
what day?
something/anything, what
literature

Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

mul
물병 mul-laeng-myeon
물다 mul-da
물리다 mul-li-da
물려 mul-li-hak
물수건 mul-ssu-geon
물약 mul-lyak
물어보다 mul-eo-bo-da
เภ inwo
미국 mi-guk
미국 사람 mi-guk-sa-ram
미국 시민 mi-guk-si-min
미국 인 mi-gug-in
미술 mi-sul
미술관에 가다 mi-sul-gwan-e ga-da
미술대학 (미대) mi-sul-dae-hak (mi-dae)
미사안 mi-si-gan
미식축구를 하다 mi-sik-chuk-gu-reul ha-da
미용사 mi-yong-sa
말 mit

바잘 ba-kkat
바꾸다 ba-kku-da
바꾸려 오다 ba-kku-reo o-da
바꿔주다 ba-kkwo-ju-da
바다 쪽 ba-da jjok
바람이 불다 ba-ram-i bul-da
바로 ba-ro
바로 가다 ba-ro ga-da
바로 뒤 ba-ro dwi
바로는 약 ba-reu-neun nyak
바쁘게 ba-ppeu-ge
바쁘다 ba-ppeu-da

water
cold noodle soup
to bite
to be bitten
physics
wet towel
liquid medicine
to ask
what, something
United States of America
American
American citizen
American
fine arts
to go to an art gallery
art school
Michigan
to play football
hairstylist
under, beneath, underneath
out, outside
to change, to switch
to come to exchange
to change, to switch
(telephones)
sea side
the wind blows
as soon as possible
(a.s.a.p.)
to go directly
right behind
ointment
busily
to be busy
비아올림을 커다 va-i-ol-in-eul kyeo-da
비자 ba-ji
박물관에 가다 bang-mul-gwan-e ga-da
박 bak
반갑다 ban-gap-da
반지 ban-ji
반창 ban-chan
반을 사랑 ban-neun sa-ram
반다 bat-da
반요시 봉 bad-eul-sil bun
발 bal
발가락 bal-kka-rak
발라주다 bal-la ju-da
발다 bal-da
발 bom
발새드로 bap-sae-do-rok
발라 bap
발라 bang-hak
발라 bae
발라 고프다 bae-ga go-peu-da
발라 부르다 bae-ga bu-reu-da
발라 아프다 bae-ga a-peu-da
발라구 하다 bae-gu-reul ha-da
발라리 bae-teo-ri
발라 back
발라 kwa-jeom
발라 beo-seu
발라 beon
발라 beol
발라 beol-sseo
발라 대학 (법대) beop-gwa-daehak (beop-dae)
발라 beo-pak
발라 beot-ga-da
발라 beot-da
발라 bel-teu
발라 byeok
발라 byeon-ho-sa
발라 byeol-lo
발라 byeong

to play violin
pants
to go to a museum
outside
to be glad
ring
side dishes
recipient
to receive
receiver
foot
toe
to put on
to be bright
night
for all night
cooked rice
(school) vacation
boat, ship, belly
to be hungry
to be full
to have stomach
pain
to play volleyball
battery
hundred
department store
bus
number, times
one pair
already
law school
law study
to undress someone
to take off
belt
wall
lawyer
not particularly
bottles

별원 byeong-won
부대는 사람 bo-nae-neun sa-ram
부대 bo-nae-da
부대 bo-da
보라바네 bo-ri-neun
보라바네 bo-ra-neun
보라바네 bo-reum
보라바네 bo-yo ju-da
보라바네 bo-i-da
보라바네 bo-tong
보라바네 bo-tong u-pyeon
보라바네 bo-heom-ka-deu
부대하다 bok-ja-pa-da

봄 bom

법대 boep-da

부대 관리 bu-deu-reo-un meo-ri
부대 관리 bu-deu-reo-wo bo-i-da
부대 관리 bu-deu-reop-da
부대 bu-mo
부대 관리 bu-san
부대 관리 bu-san-haeng
부대 관리 bu-chi-da
부대 관리 bu-ta-ka-da

분봉색 bun-hong-saek

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun-hong-saek

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun-hong-saek

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun-hong-saek

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun-hong-saek

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun-hong-saek

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun-hong-saek

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun

분봉색 bun
비빔밥 bi-bim-pap
비서 bi-seo
비슷하다 bi-seu-ta-da
비싸다 bi-ssa-da
비올라 vi-ol-la-reul kyeo-da
비자 bi-ja
비행기 bi-haeng-gi
비행기표 bi-haeng-gi-pyo
비행장 bi-haeng-jang
볼리주다 bil-lyeo-ju-da

봄 봄 ppal-reun u-pyeon
별빛 ppal-gan
별간색 ppal-gan-saek
별글다 ppal-ga-ta
별매를 하다 ppal-la-reul ha-da
별리 ppal-li
별점 ppang-jjip
바다 ppae-da

햇기다 ppae-t-gi-da
벚다 ppae-da
벚빛한 머리 ppeot-ppeo-tan meo-ri

사 sa
사각형 sa-ka-kyeong
사거리 sa-geo-ri
시다 sa-da
사람 sa-ram
사우실 sa-mu-sil
사범대학 (서대) sa-beom-dae-hak (sa-dae)
사실은 sa-sil-eun
사업가 sa-eop-ga
사용하다 sa-yong-ha-da

사월 sa-wol
사위 sa-wi
사이다 sa-i-da
사이즈 sa-i-jeu
사인 sa-in
사장 sa-jang
사진관 sa-jin-gwan
사진을 찍다 sa-jin-eul jjik-da
사촌 sa-chon
사촌동생 sa-chon-dong-saeng
사회학 sa-hoe-hak
차출 sa-heul
선 san
산 쪽 san jok
산책하다 san-teu-ta-da
산책을 하다 san-chae-eul ha-da
산다 sal-da
산 sam
산학합 sam-ga-kyeong
산월 sam-wol
산촌 sam-chon

상가 sang-ga
상경대학 (상대) sang-gyeong-dae-hak (sang-dae)
상권당하다 sang-gwan-eop-da

상상이 안 되다 sang-sang-i an-doe-da
상자 sang-ja
상처가 나다 sang-cheo-ga na-da
상태 sang-tae
상하다 sang-ha-da
새로 sae-ro
새로 나오다 sae-ro na-o-da
새벽 sae-byeok
색깔 seok-kkal
색상 seok-sang

rice with mixed vegetables
secretary
to be similar
to be expensive
viola
airplane
airplane ticket
airport
to lend for someone’s benefit
express mail
red
red (color)
to be red
to do laundry
fast
bakery
to pull out, to take off (rings, gloves, etc.)
to be taken away
to take away
thick hair

사월 sa-wol
사위 sa-wi
사이다 sa-i-da
사이즈 sa-i-jeu
사인 sa-in
사장 sa-jang
사진관 sa-jin-gwan
사진을 찍다 sa-jin-eul jjik-da
사촌 sa-chon
사촌동생 sa-chon-dong-saeng
사회학 sa-hoe-hak
차출 sa-heul
선 san
산 쪽 san jok
산책하다 san-teu-ta-da
산책을 하다 san-chae-eul ha-da
산다 sal-da
산 sam
산학합 sam-ga-kyeong
산월 sam-wol
산촌 sam-chon

상가 sang-ga
상경대학 (상대) sang-gyeong-dae-hak (sang-dae)
상권당하다 sang-gwan-eop-da

상상이 안 되다 sang-sang-i an-doe-da
상자 sang-ja
상처가 나다 sang-cheo-ga na-da
상태 sang-tae
상하다 sang-ha-da
새로 sae-ro
새로 나오다 sae-ro na-o-da
새벽 sae-byeok
색깔 seok-kkal
색상 seok-sang

April
son-in-law
7-up
size
signature
president of a company
photograph
developing shop
to take a picture
cousin
younger cousin
sociology
3 days
mountain
mountainside
to be neat and fresh
to go for a walk
to live
three
triangle
March
uncle (father’s brothers in general)
mall
business school
to be all right, to not matter
to be unable to imagine
box
to get hurt
condition
to be damaged
newly
to be newly released
dawn
color
color and shape
San Diego
to form, to open
to menstruate, to be having one's period
biology
fish
birthday (hon.)
to take a shower
to shampoo
to stop
thirty
service
Seoul
bookstore
to mix
to give a present
teacher
fan
to wash dishes
to have diarrhea
Celsius
name (formal)
name (hon.)
to wash one's face
to stop (hon.)
to stop
sale period
to discount (hon.)
washing machine
cents
three
shirt
beef
fire department, fire station
fire truck
pediatrics
soju

Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

숙도 so-po
소화가 안 되다 so-hwa-ga an-doc-da
속 sok
속달우편 sok-da-ul-pyoon
속옷 sog-ot
손 son
손/발을 찬다 son/bal-eul ssit-da
손가락 son-kka-rak
손녀 son-nyeo
손남 son-nim
손자 son-ja
손주 son-ju
손릴하다 son-jil-ha-da
수명가야 syo-ping-ga-da
수건 su-geon
수고하다 su-go-ha-da
수박 su-bak
수수료 su-su-ryo
수영을 하다 su-yeong-eul ha-da
수영장 su-yeong-jang
수요일 su-yo-il
수원 su-won
수표 supyo
수학 su-hak
 showMessage가 함들다 sum-swii-gi-ga him-deul-da

수영을 씻다 sum-eul swii-da
원 swin
슈퍼마켓 syu-peo-ma-ket
소금을 seu-mu-nal
소금 seu-mul
스웨터 seu-we-teo
스카프 seu-ka-peu
스케이트를 타다 seu-ke-i-teu-reul ta-da
스키를 타다 seu-ki-reul ta-da
스터린 seu-ta-king
스투레가 많다/많이이다 seu-teu-re-seeu-ga man-ta /ssa-i-da

package
to have indigestion
in, inside
express mail
underwear
hand
to wash one's hands/feet
finger
granddaughter
guest, visitor, customer
grandson
grandchildren
to take care
to go shopping
towel
to work hard
watermelon
fee, charge
to swim
swimming pool
Wednesday
Su-won, Korea
check
mathematics
to have difficulty breathing
to breath
fifty
supermarket
20 days
twenty
sweater
scarf
to skate
to ski
panty hose
to be stressed
스트레스가 풀리다 seu-teu-re-sseu-ga pul-li-da
스트레이트 파마 seu-teu-re-i-teu pa-ma

스페인 seu-pe-in
스페인 사람 seu-pe-in sa-ram
스페인어 seu-pe-in-eo
스페인인 seu-pe-in-in
스프레이를 하다 seu-peu-re-i-reul ha-da
습포다 seu-peu-da
습도 seu-p-do
시 si
시간 si-gan
시각(이) 있다 si-gan(-i) it-da
시계 si-ge
시계 방 si-ge ppang
시그널 si-kkeu-reop-ge
시그널 다 si-kkeu-reop-da
시내 si-nae
시다 si-da
시아버님 si-a-beo-nim
시어머님 si-eo-meo-nim
시원하다 si-won-ha-da
시월 si-wol
시작하다 si-ja-ka-da
시키다 si-ki-da
식구 sik-gu
식사 후 sik-sa-hu
식점(에) sik-jeon-(eo)
식취(에) si-ku-(eo)
신기다 si-gi-da
신나다 sin-na-da
신다 sin-tta
신발 sin-bal
신발가게 sin-bal-kka-ge
신분증 sin-bun-jeung
신청서 sin-cheong-seo
to relieve stress
straight permanent
(hairstyle)
Spain
Spanish
Spanish language
Spanish
to put on hairspray
to be sad
humidity
o'clock
time, hour
to have the time
watch, clock
watch repair store
loudly
to be loud
downtown
to be sour
father-in-law
(female speaker)
mother-in-law
(female speaker)
to be cool
October
to start
to order
family, family
members (casual)
after a meal
before a meal
after a meal
to put shoes on
someone
to be excited
to wear
shoes
shoe store
ID card
application

Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

signal
traffic signal
indoor swimming pool
bad manners
Excuse me.....
to not be likable
to dislike
psychology
to feel bored
to be serious, to be severe
ten
December
November
to be blend
to be chilly
to be written
to write
to use, to be used

아 a
아이 하다 a-ha-da
아니 a-ni
아니면 a-ni-myeon
아니오 a-ni-o
아들 a-deul
아래 a-rae
아무 a-mu
아무 분 a-mu bun
아버지 a-beo-ji
아이 a-i
아이구 a-i-gu
아주 a-ju
아주머니 a-ju-meo-ni
아직 a-jik

Middle-aged woman
yet, still
yet
oh,
morning, breakfast
to have a breakfast
apartment
to be hurt, to be sick
nine
9 days
ninety
inside, not
glasses
ophthalmology
to be held
to be well
safely, peacefully
to hold
to sit
to be sitting
to seat someone
to know

in a way that one
thinks is right
without getting permission or confirmation from others
to do something in a way that one
thinks is right
without asking permission or receiving confirmation from another person

pill, tablet
front
front hair
from now on

Ambulance

to play baseball
drugstore
drugstore
pharmacist
appointment time
to take a medication
to be weak
college of pharmacy
socks
Western food
Western restaurant
Western liquors
to brush one's teeth
shoe store
shoulder
some, which
which person
which way
where, somewhere/
anywhere

How about ~?
How is it?
which, a certain,
what kind of
which one
how, somehow
to be how
when (someone was) young
uh uh
mother
quickly, please
match well
to match well
yesterday
to be dizzy
alas, wow...
hundred million
woman's older sister
linguistics
### Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>엄마 eom-da</td>
<td>sometime/anytime, when? whenever, always whenever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엄마 eom-da-na</td>
<td>face to freeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엄마 eom-da-deun-ji</td>
<td>to freeze something how much? a while ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엄마 eom-da-deun-ji</td>
<td>how long/much/many?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엄마 eom-da-deun-ji</td>
<td>the ice freezes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엄마 eom-da-deun-ji</td>
<td>not to exist, not to have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엄마 eom-da-deun-ji</td>
<td>buttocks, hip, air conditioner, engineer, passport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엄마 eom-da-deun-ji</td>
<td>here, eight, younger sister, 8 days, eighty, summer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엄마 eom-da-deun-ji</td>
<td>six, woman, 10 days, light yellow (color) ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엄마 eom-da-deun-ji</td>
<td>to open, to have fever, 10 days, dyeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엄마 eom-da-deun-ji</td>
<td>to go to watch a movie, to watch a movie beside, side, nearby side hair, yes, OK, to save money, to deposit for prevention, pretty, beautifully, to be pretty, sixty, five, today, to come, after a long time, long time no see, to be old (object) right side</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
오른쪽으로 가다 o-reun-jjog-eu-ro ga-da
오바 o-ba
오빠 o-ppa
오월 o-wol
오전 o-jeon
오토바이 o-to-ba-i
오후 o-hu
오도 on-do
올라가다 ol-la-ga-da
올라오다 ol-la-o-da
올해 ol-hae
옷 ot
옷가게 ot-ga-ge
와 wa
왜이서츠 wa-i-syeo-cheu
왜 wae
왜와 oe-kkwa
왜사촌 oe-sa-chon
왜감촌 oe-sam-chon
왜숙모 oe-sung-mo
원쪽 oen-jjok
원쪽으로 가다 oen-jjog-eu-ro ga-da
요금 yo-geum
요즘 yo-jeum
우리 u-ri
우체국 u-che-guk
우체국 직원 u-che-guk jig-won
우체부 u-che-bu
우체동 u-che-tong
우편번호 u-pyon-beon-ho
우편요금 u-pyon-yo-geum
우표 u-pyo
우표를 붙이다 u-pyo-reul bu-chi-da
우표를 사다 u-pyo-reul sa-da
우회전하다 u-hoe-jeon-ha-da,
운통선수 un-dong-seon-su
운전기사 un-jeon-gi-sa
운전하다 un-jeon-ha-da
to turn right
clothes
clothing store
wow
dress shirts
why
external department
cousin (maternal)
uncle (maternal)
aunt (외삼촌, 's wife)
left
to turn left
fire
to put on a stamp
stamp
stamp
stamp
to drive
to make someone cry
to make someone laugh
Monday
kindergarten
kindergarten student
overpass
bank
bank account
application
drink, beverage
food
music
music school
to listen to music
go to a concert
medical school
health insurance
card
doctor
medical study
two
this/that person
this/that person
this/that person
대부분의 한국어

일식 il-szik
일식당 il-szik-dang
일어나다 il-eo-na-da
일요일 il-yo-il
일행 il-wol
일주일 han il-jju-il
일찍 il-jjik
일зван il-heun
일어주다 ilg-eo-jju-da

일 ip
일금표 ip-geum-pyo
입다 ip-da
입여 보다 ib-co-bo-da

일에 맞다 ih-e mat-da
일원하다 ib-won-ha-da
일히다 ip-da
맞음 in-mom
있다 it-da
맞여버리다 ij-co-beo-ri-da

대부분의 한국어

자기용 ja-ga-yong
자기앞수표 ja-gi-ap su-pyo
자꾸 ja-ku
자다 ja-da
자동 응답기 ja-dong eung-dap-gi
자동차 ja-dong-cha
자라다 ja-ra-da
자르다 ja-reu-da
자리 ja-ri
자연대학 (자연대)
ja-yeon-dae-hak (ja-yeon-dae)
자연가 ja-jeon-geo
자연경을 타다 ja-jeon-geo-reul ta-da
자주 ja-ju
자켓 ja-ket

일식 il-szik
일식당 il-szik-dang
일어나다 il-eo-na-da
일요일 il-yo-il
일행 il-wol
일주일 han il-jju-il
일찍 il-jjik
일зван il-heun
일어주다 ilg-eo-jju-da

일 ip
일금표 ip-geum-pyo
입다 ip-da
입여 보다 ib-co-bo-da

일에 맞다 ih-e mat-da
일원하다 ib-won-ha-da
일히다 ip-da
맞음 in-mom
있다 it-da
맞여버리다 ij-co-beo-ri-da

대부분의 한국어

자기용 ja-ga-yong
자기앞수표 ja-gi-ap su-pyo
자꾸 ja-ku
자다 ja-da
자동차 ja-dong eung-dap-gi
자동차 ja-dong-cha
자라다 ja-ra-da
자르다 ja-reu-da
자리 ja-ri
자연대학 (자연대)
ja-yeon-dae-hak (ja-yeon-dae)
자연가 ja-jeon-geo
자연경을 타다 ja-jeon-geo-reul ta-da
자주 ja-ju
자켓 ja-ket

Japanese food
Japanese restaurant
to get up, to wake up
Sunday
January
a week
early
seventy
to read for someone’s benefit
mouth
deposit slip
to wear
to try on (clothes),
to wear
to fit someone’s taste
to hospitalize
dress someone’s
gum
to exist, to have
to forget
car, automobile
(personal)
official check
again and again
to sleep
answering machine
car, automobile (in general)
to grow
to have a cut, to cut
seat
school of sciences
bike
to ride a bicycle
often
jacket

Beginner’s Korean
Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

시편기 ja-pan-gi
작가jak-ga
작년 jang-nyeon
작은 아버지 jang-eun a-beo-ji
작은 어머니 jang-eun eo-meo-ni

전 jan
전동 jan-don
ثلاث jal
잘 되다 jal deo-da
잘 맞다 jal mat-da
잘 먹다 jal meok-da
잘 있다 jal it-da
잘 해 주다 jal hae ju-da
잘 드리다 jal-la dce-ri-da

영민이 jam-kkan-man
영호 후 jam-si-hu
영돌 지다 jam-eul ja-da
탭 다 jap-da
탭시다 jap-su-si-da
탭지 jap-jj
탭하다 ja-pi-da
장 jang
장갑 jang-gap
장난감 가게 jang-nan-kkam ga-ge
장모님 jang-mo-nim

장사 jang-sa
점심에 걸리다 jang-yeom-e geol-li-da
장안이론 jang-in-eo-reun

재미있게 jae-mi-it-ge
재미있다 jae-mi-it-da
재우다 jae-u-da

banding machine
writer
last year
uncle (father's younger brother)
 Aunt (mother's wife)
cups, glasses
change
well
to have done well, to be going well
to fit well
to eat well
to be well
give special care
to cut something for someone (hum.)
for a minute
after a while
to sleep
to catch
to eat (hon.)
magazine
to be caught
shoes
glove
toy store
mother-in-law (male speaker)
business
to have an intestinal problem
father-in-law (male speaker)
interestingly
to be fun, be interesting
to make someone sleep

제작년 jae-jang-nyeon
자 jae
자금하다 jae-geum-ha-da
자기 jae-gi
자녀 jae-nyoek
자녀들 먹다 jae-nyoog-eul meok-da
자식 jae-joek
자매 jae-ji
전 세계적으로 jae se-gye-jeog-eu-ko
전부 jae-bu
전화 jae-hwa
전화 걸다 jae-hwa geol-da
전화번호 jae-hwa-beon-ho
전화하다 jae-hwa-ha-da

점심 jaeom-sim
점심 먹다 jaeom-sim meok-da
점심시간 jaeom-sim-si-gan
점원 jaeom-won
점원과 jaeom-jan-sa
점과 중 하나 jaeom-jan-eun geot
점과 jaeom-jeom
점과 작가 jaeom-kka
점과 하다 jaeom-ri-ha-da
점말 jaeom-mal
점사장 jaeong-sa-gaeoyeong
점사장 jaeong-sam-ga-kyeong
점지 jaeong-jang
점지 바지 jaeong-jang ba-ji
점차 혁 jaeong-chi-hak
제 jae
제가 보기에는 jae ga bo-gi-e-neun
제과점 jae-gwa-jeom
제일 jae-il
제일 필름 jae-il-bil-ling

the year before last
I (hum.)
to save money, to deposit (money)
to have dinner
to our (hum.)
telephone
after a while
to eat lunch
to make a telephone call
telephone number
telephone call (hum.)
to make a telephone call
afternoon, lunch
to eat lunch
lunch time
salesperson
to be decent
plain item
gradually
original price
to organize
really, so
square
triangle
suit
dress pants
political science
my
in my opinion
bakery
the most, the first
Je-II Building
458

BEGINNER’S KOREAN

XII S je-pum
3 jo
3 3 jo-geum
;
3yy jo-geum-man
3 2J S oh Eh jo-ging-eul ha-da
3 9 h j o-ka
S jom
iSc! jong-eob-won

§»gAH 8m/gCf

’

,

j<mg-hap-geom-sa-reul ha-da/bat-da
H Eh j o-ta
SOhohO jo-a-ha-da
OhiSj jo-eun a-chim
S
Sf jo-eun yak
3h3 jwa-seok ’
ih^Sll jwa-seok-beon-ho
3hSJ y ShEh jwa-hoe-jeon-ha-da
31 ^ 6h Ch joe-song-ha-da
3Eh ju-da
3 §= ju-mal
3 3 A | Ch ju-mu-si-da
nr § 5h Ch ju-inun-ha-da,
3 Ah® §1 Ch ju-sa-reulmat-da
nr 3 ju-SO
nr 3 f| 3 Eh ju-so-rcul sseu-da
nr 3 ju-seu
32! ju-in
3 F ju-.jung
3 §3 ju-hwang-saek
^Ehjuk-da
^01 Eh jug-i-da
1133 jul-mu-ni
S3 CHI jung-gan-e
S S jung-guk
§ y Ah S jung-guk sa-ram
SSOi jung-gug-eo
§n2! jung-gug-in

Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary
product
trillion
a little
a little
to jog
nephew, niece
a little, please
waiter, waitress,
employee
to get a general
examination
to like, to be likable;
to be good
to like
good morning
good medicine
seat
seat number
to make a left turn
to be sorry
to give
weekend
to sleep (hon.)
to order
to get injected
addies s

S31 jung-sik
S31 S jung-sik-dang
21-3 X)| S jung-ang-u-che-guk
g «j- HI jung-hak-gyo
S3S jung-hak-saeng
S 3 Eh jeul-geop-da
SAh jeung-sang
XIS ji-geum
XIS 3 ji-geum-do
XI ir! @ ji-nan dal
XI t! 3 ji-nan ju
XI LH Eh ji-nae-da
XI ^
Eh ji-ru-ha-da
XI Sh ji-ha
XI 8h3 ji-ha-do
XI ShS ji-ha-cheol
3 Ah33 jik-sa-ga-kyeong
Sj y jig-won
y y S.I o| jig-won-hoe-ui
Sj 3 Sh Eh jik-jin-ha-da
Si fy jik-haeng
3 3 3 ^i jin-no-ran-saek
y l_ ai- ah jin-no-rang-saek
y XI jin-ji
3 S' S 5h Eh/y Eh jin-chal-eul ha-da/bat-da
y Eh 333 jin-han no-ran-saelc

weekdays
orange (color)
to die
to kill someone
stripe pattern
in the middle, on the
way ~
China
. Chinese
Chinese language .
Chinese

Sjip
S Ahy j ip-sa-ram
5! Eh jit-da
§ Eh jit-da
W Eh jja-da
Sh All jjalp-ge
au Eh jj alp-da
la tEr CH El jjalb-eun meo-ri
ft 91 Eh jjot-gi-da
ft Eh jjot-da
Sijjuk

459

Chinese food
Chinese restaurant
central post office
junior high school
junior high student
to be happy
symptom
now
even now
last month
last week
to spend time, to live
to be bored to death
basement
underpass
subway
rectangle
employee
staff meeting
to go straight
non-stop, direct
dark yellow (color)
dark yellow (color)
meal (hon.)
to examine (in a
hospital)
dark yellow (color)
house
(my) wife
to build
to be dark
to be salty
short, shortly
to be short
short hair
to be chased
to chase
straight


한국어-영어 사전

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>영어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>차 타는 곳 cha-ta-neun got</td>
<td>ground transportation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>차다 cha-da</td>
<td>to be cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>천문 chan-mul</td>
<td>cold water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>첱 cham</td>
<td>really, oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>첼 cham-tta</td>
<td>to be patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>첤부 창 cheung-cheuk</td>
<td>window side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾아 chat-da</td>
<td>to look for, to find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾아 오다 chaj-a'-o-da</td>
<td>to come to see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책방 chaek-bang</td>
<td>bookstore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책을 읽다 cheeg-eul ilk-da</td>
<td>to read a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>체방전 cheo-bang-jeon</td>
<td>prescription</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>체음 cheo-eum</td>
<td>for the first time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>천 cheon</td>
<td>thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>천보영화 cheop-bo-yeong-hwa</td>
<td>navy blue (color)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>천번 째 cheot-beon-jjae</td>
<td>college of physical education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>천색 cheong-saek</td>
<td>checkered pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>체육대학 (체대) che-yuk-dae-hak (che-dae)</td>
<td>cello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>체크무늬 che-keu-mu-nui, che-keu-mu-ni</td>
<td>elementary school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>체크로 천-ro-reul kyeo-da</td>
<td>elementary student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>초등학교 cho-deung-hak-gyo</td>
<td>green (color)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>초등학생 cho-deung-hak-saeng</td>
<td>to get cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>초록색 cho-rok-saek</td>
<td>to play soccer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주위지다 chu-wo-ji-da</td>
<td>withdrawal slip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>축구를 하다 chuk-gu-reul ha-da</td>
<td>departure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>축구장 ip-chul-guem-pyo</td>
<td>to depart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>축구하는 곳 chul-bal-ha-neun got</td>
<td>to dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>축구하하다 chul-bal-ha-da</td>
<td>to feel cold, to be cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>축구를 하다 chum-eul chu-da</td>
<td>layer, story, floor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>축구하다 chup-da</td>
<td>dentistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>축구 cheung</td>
<td>dental school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지과 지구 지구대학 (지대) chi-kkwa-dae-hak (chi-dae)</td>
<td>to give medical treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지고 지료 지료대학 (지대) chi-ryo-reul ha-da</td>
<td>skirt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>영어</th>
<th>한국어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>치실 chi-sil</td>
<td>ground transportation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>치약 chi-yak</td>
<td>to be cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>치주염 chi-ju-yeom</td>
<td>cold water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>침 chir</td>
<td>really, oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>침대 chil</td>
<td>to be patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>침의 chil-wol</td>
<td>window side</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

카드 ka-deu
카드놓을 떨다 ka-deu nol-i-reul ha-da
c페이 ka-ge
캐나다 아나 있하다 kae-na-da
캐나다 사람 kae-na-da sa-ram
c캐나다인 kae-na-da-in
c캐주일 kae-ju-eol
c코 미디어 koe-teu-ha-da
c코피 keo-pi
c코피숍 keo-pi-syop
c컴퓨터 keom-pu-teo
c컴퓨터 게임을 하다 keom-pyu-teo ge-im-eul ha-da
c코스 ko
c코가 막히다 ko-ga ma-ki-da
c코트 co-teu
c플라 볼-la
플라 짐이 나타 koe-mul-i na-da
c국제 keu-ge
 큰머지 keun-a-beo-ji
c큰머지 아내 keun-eo-meo-ni
c큰머지 아내가 나타 keun-il na-da
c플라넷 keul-la-ri-net-eul bul-da

## Card, Credit Card
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>영어</th>
<th>한국어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>카드 노입을 하다 ka-deu nol-i-reul ha-da</td>
<td>card, credit card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>캐피</td>
<td>to play a card game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>캐나다</td>
<td>카페, coffee shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>캐나다 사람</td>
<td>Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>캐나다 인</td>
<td>Canadian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>캐주일</td>
<td>casual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>코 미디어</td>
<td>to have a haircut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>코피</td>
<td>coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>코피숍</td>
<td>coffee shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>코미터</td>
<td>computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>코미터 게임을 하다 keom-pyu-teo ge-im-eul ha-da</td>
<td>to play a computer game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>코스</td>
<td>nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>코가 막히다 ko-ga ma-ki-da</td>
<td>to have nasal congestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>코트</td>
<td>coat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>플라 볼-la</td>
<td>cola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>플라 짐이 나타 koe-mul-i na-da</td>
<td>to have a runny nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>국격 keu-ge</td>
<td>widely, big, loudly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>큰머지 keun-a-beo-ji</td>
<td>uncle (father's older brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>큰머지 아내 keun-eo-meo-ni</td>
<td>aunt ( 큰머지 's wife)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>큰머지 아내가 나타 keun-il na-da</td>
<td>to have trouble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>플라넷 keul-la-ri-net-eul bul-da</td>
<td>to play clarinet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Riding
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>영어</th>
<th>한국어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>타기 ta-gi</td>
<td>riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타는 타 나중 de</td>
<td>place to ride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타다 ta-da</td>
<td>to ride, to burn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타원형 ta-won-hyeong</td>
<td>oval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타일 ta-il</td>
<td>tile</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
462 BEGINNER'S KOREAN

Appendix 2: Korean-English Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>발구르 치다 tak-gu-reul chi-da</td>
<td>to play ping-pong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>탈의실 tal-ui-sil</td>
<td>fitting room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태어나다 tae-eo-na-da</td>
<td>to be born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태우다 tae-u-da</td>
<td>to burn something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태시 taeck-si</td>
<td>taxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>택 teok</td>
<td>chin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>될다 teol-da</td>
<td>to shake off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>레이스치다 te-ni-seu-reul chi-da</td>
<td>to play tennis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>텔레비전을 보다 tel-le-bi-jeon-eul bo-da</td>
<td>to watch TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>토요일 to-yo-il</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도하다 to-ha-da</td>
<td>to vomit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>동장 tong-jang</td>
<td>deposit and withdrawal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>opening a bank account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>time to leave the office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to release (from a hospital)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to play trumpet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to play a card game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>especially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to turn on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파란 pa-ran</td>
<td>blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파란색 pa-ran-sack</td>
<td>blue (color)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파랗다 pa-ra-ta</td>
<td>to be blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파랗게 pa-ma neo-ri</td>
<td>permanent-waved hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파마하다 pa-ma-ha-da</td>
<td>to have a permanent pounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파운드 pa-un-deu</td>
<td>scallion pancake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파전 pa-jeon</td>
<td>eight, arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팔 pal</td>
<td>to sell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팔다 pal-da</td>
<td>to be sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팔리다 pal-li-da</td>
<td>August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팔월 pal-wol</td>
<td>to buy Convenient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Convenient store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sending a mail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to receive a letter/package</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to write a letter/envelope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>letter paper/wine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ticket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to untie/France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>French language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>French platform/floss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to play flute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to bleed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to be tired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to play piano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>things to be needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한나 ha-na</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하나 ha-da</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하루 ha-ru</td>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하루에 ha-ru-e</td>
<td>per day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하얀 ha-yan</td>
<td>white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하얀색 ha-yan-sack</td>
<td>white (color)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하얄다 ha-ya-ta</td>
<td>to be white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학년 hang-nyeon</td>
<td>school year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학생 hak-saeng</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한국 han-guk</td>
<td>Korea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한국인 han-guk-bun</td>
<td>Korean (pron.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한국 사람 han-guk sa-ram</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
한국, related to Korea
한국어 Korean language
한국인 Korean
한식 Korean food
한식당 Korean restaurant
한식점 Han-sik-jip
한영서점 Han-yeong-seo-jeom
한잔 han jan
할 수 없다 hal sue op-da
할머니 hal-meo-ni
할머니 앵 hal-meo-ni daek
할아버지 hal-a-beo-ji
할머니 하다 hap-seung-ha-da
항공 우편 hang-gong u-pyeon
항공편으로 hang-gong-pyeon-eu-ro
항상 hang-sang
해 드리다 hae deu-ri-da
해 두다 hae ju-da
랜드온 haen-deu-pon
행복하다 haeng-bo-ka-da
행인 haeng-in
허리 heo-ri
헤어 디자이나 he eo di-ja-i-neo
헤어 콜론 he eo keu-ri-n
현금 hyeon-geum
현금지급기 hyeon-geum-gi-geup-gi
현금카드 hyeon-geum-ka-deu
현금 hyeong
호주 ho-ju
호주 사람 ho-ju sa-ram
호주인 ho-ju-in
혹시 hok-si
혼자 hon-ja

화가 날다 hwa-ga na-da
화씨 hwa-ssi
화요일 hwa-yo-il
화원 hwa-won
화학 hwa-hak
환영회 hwan-yeong-hoe
환율 hwan-nyul
환율이 내리다 hwan-nyul-i nae-ri-da
환율이 오르다 hwan-nyul-i o-reu-da
환전을 하다 hwan-jeon-eul-ha-da
환전하기 hwan-jeon-ha-gi
환전하다 hwan-jeon-ha-da
회사 hoe-sa
회사원 hoe-sa-won
회색 hoe-saek
환란 보도 hoeng-dan-bo-do
환권 hwol-sain
흐려지다 heu-ryeo-ji-da
물... heum

to be angry
Fahrenheit
Tuesday
florist/flower shop
chemistry
welcome party
exchange rate
goes down
the exchange rate
goes up
to exchange money
exchanging currency
to exchange money
company
office employee
gray (color)
crosswalk
much more
to get cloudy
hmmm...
Appendix 3:

*English-Korean Vocabulary*
abnormal weather 이상기운 현상
above zero 이상
above 위
account 구좌
across the street 건너편
address 주소
adjust 맞추다
afraid 두려하다
after a long time 오래간만에
after a meal 식사 후
after a while 잠시 후
afternoon 점심
again 다시
again and again 다시 다시
age 연세
ah 이 a
ahead 먼지
air 공기
air conditioner 에어컨
air mail 항공우편
airline 항공
airport 공항
airmail via airmail 항공우편으로
A.M. 오전
America 미국
American 미국인
American citizen 미국인
and 그리고
anger 화
angry 화가
animal 동물
answering machine 자동 응답기
anthropology 인류학
apartment 아파트
apartment complex 아파트 단지
appearance 야상
appearance 야상
application 신청서
appointment 약속
appointment 시간
approach 근접
approximately 근접
April 사월
architecture 건축학
arm 팔
arrive 도착하다
art gallery 미술관
art school 미술학교
as soon as possible (a.s.a.p.) 바로
Asian studies 동양학
Asian studies 동양학
ask 물어보다
at last 마지막으로
ATM card 현금카드
ATM machine 현금자동장치
attach 붙이다
attached 붙이다
attend 다니다
August 팔월
August 팔월

Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

ambulance 구급차
A.M. 오전
America 미국
American 미국인
American citizen 미국인
and 그리고
anger 화
angry 화가
animal 동물
answering machine 자동 응답기
anthropology 인류학
apartment 아파트
apartment complex 아파트 단지
appearance 야상
appearance 야상
application 신청서
appointment 약속
appointment 시간
approach 근접
approximately 근접
April 사월
architecture 건축학
arm 팔
arrive 도착하다
art gallery 미술관
art school 미술학교
as soon as possible (a.s.a.p.) 바로
Asian studies 동양학
Asian studies 동양학
ask 물어보다
at last 마지막으로
ATM card 현금카드
ATM machine 현금자동장치
attach 붙이다
attached 붙이다
attend 다니다
August 팔월
August 팔월
aunt
Australia
Australian
automobile
autumn

back
bad
baggage
bakery
bald
banding machine
bank
bank account
bank account application
barber
baseball
basement
basketball
bath
battery
be
beautifully
become
beef
beer
before a meal
behind
belly
below
below zero

belt
beneath
beside
better
beverage
bicycle
big
bill
biology
birthday
bite
bitten
black
bleed
blend
block
blocked
blouse
blow
blow-dry
(blow-dry)
blue

navy blue
boarding pass
boat
boil
boil something
book
bookstore
bored
born
bottle
box
(box)
boxing
breakfast

Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

belt
beneath
beside
better
beverage
bicycle
big
bill
biology
birthday
bite
bitten
black
bleed
blend
block
blocked
blouse
blow
blow-dry
(blow-dry)
blue

navy blue
boarding pass
boat
boil
boil something
book
bookstore
bored
born
bottle
box
(box)
boxing
breakfast
Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

C

café  다방 da-bang, 카페 ka-pe
Canada  캐나다 kae-na-da
Canadian  캐나다 사람 kae-na-da sa-ram,
           캐나다인 kae-na-da-in
car  자가용 ja-ga-yong, 자동차 ja-dong-cha
    rental car  렌트카 ren-teu-ka
card  카드 ka-deu
    card game  카드놀이를 하다 ka-deu nol-i-reul ha-da,
                   트럼프를 치다 teu-room-peu-reul chi-da
cash  현금 hyeon-geum
      casual  편주얼 kee-ju-eol
      catch  잡다 jap-da
      caught  잡히다 ja-pi-da
      cello  첼로 cheol-lo-reul kyeo-da
      cellular phone  핸드폰 han-deu-pon
      Celsius  석씨 seok-si
      cent  센트 sen-teu
      central  중앙 jung-ang
      certain  어떤 eo-teon
      (by any) chance  혹시 hok-si
      change  거스름색 gos-ruem-seo
      chapter  장문 장문 jang-mun
      charge  수수료 su-su-ryo
      chase  쫓다 jot-da'
      chased  쫓기다 jot-ki-da
      check  개산서 keossedo-coreo, 수표 supyo
           official check  자체부속자 ja-gi-ap su-pyo
      checkered pattern  체크무늬 cheo-keu-mu-ni, che-keu-mu-ni
      chemistry  화학 hwa-hak
      chest  가슴 ga-seum
      chicken  닭고기 dak-go-gi
      child  아이 a-i
      chilly  삐[position: 'left']
      Chin  중국 jung-guk
      Chinese  중국 사람 jung-guk sa-ram,
              중국인 jung-gug-in
      Chinese food  중국음식 jung-gug-cum-sik
BEGINNER'S KOREAN

Chinese language
Chinese restaurant
civil servant
clarinet
play clarinet
clean
(become) clean
climate
climb
climb a mountain
clinic'
clock
close
closed
clothes
clothing store
cloudy
come
come down
come out
come to see
come up
company
computer
play a
computer game
concert
condition
congestion
(have nasal) congestion
construction
on the construction site
contact
convenience store
convenient
cook
cooked rice
cool
correct
cough
couple of
course
cousin
cousin (younger)
credit card
cross
crosswalk
crowd
cry
(make somonoe) cry
cup
curly
curly hair
come

Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

come down 내려오다 nae-ryeo-o-da
come out 나오다 na-o-da
come to sec 찾아 오다 chaj-a-o-da,
company 회사 hoc-sa
computer 컴퓨터 keom-pu-teo

convenient 가게 ga-ge, 편의점 pyeon-ui-jeom

contact 연락 yeol-lak, 연락하다 yeol-la-ka-da
convenience store 가게 ga-ge, 편의점 pyeon-ui-jeom
convenient 편리하다 pyeol-li-ha-da

correct 맞다 mat-da

couple of 몇 가지 myeot ga-ji

course 과목 gwa-mok

cousin 사촌 sa-chor, 외사촌 oe-sa-chor

cousin (younger) 사촌동생 sa-chor-dong-saeng

credit card 신용카드 sin-yong-ka-deu

cross 건너다 geon-neo-da

crosswalk 횡단보도 hoeng-dan-bo-do

crowd 박집하다 bok-ja-pa-da

cry 울다 ul-da

cup 모닥 kèm gop-seul-gop-seul-han

curly 긴들어 gop-seul meo-ri
Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>discount</td>
<td>깊추다 kkakk-a-ju-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disease</td>
<td>병 byeong, 질병 jil-byeong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dislike</td>
<td>심다 sil-ta, 싸하다 sil-eo-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dizzy</td>
<td>이지럽다 eo-ji-reop-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>하다 ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doctor</td>
<td>의사 ui-sa, 의사 선생님 ui-sa seon-saeng-nim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dollar</td>
<td>달러 dal-la, 루 bul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down</td>
<td>내려가다 nac-ryeo-ga-da, 내리다 nac-ri-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>downtown</td>
<td>그림을 그리다 geum-rim-eul geu-ri-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw a picture</td>
<td>원피스 won-pi-seu, 임다 ip-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dress</td>
<td>임하다 i-pi-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>음료수 eum-nyo-su, 마시다 ma-si-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something to drink</td>
<td>마실 것 ma-sil kkeot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>운전하다 un-jeon-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>driver</td>
<td>기사 gi-sa, 운전기사 un-jeon-gi-sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(by) driving</td>
<td>운전해서 un-jeon-hae-soo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drugstore</td>
<td>약국 yak-guk, 약방 yak-bang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drum</td>
<td>드럼 deu-reom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play drums</td>
<td>드럼을 치다 deu-reom-eul chi-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry</td>
<td>말리다 mal-li-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry-clean</td>
<td>드라이하다 deu-ra-i-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry cleaning</td>
<td>드라이무늬 deu-ra-i-keul-li-ning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>during the time</td>
<td>그 동안 geu-dong-an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dye</td>
<td>염색하다 yom-sae-ka-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyeing</td>
<td>염색 yeom-saek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economics</td>
<td>경제학 gyeong-je-hak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>education study</td>
<td>교육학 gyo-yuk-hak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eight days</td>
<td>여덟 날 yeo-deu-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eight</td>
<td>여덟 yeo-deol, 팔 pal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eighty</td>
<td>팔십 yeo-deun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elementary school</td>
<td>초등학교 cho-deung-hak-gyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>student</td>
<td>초등학생 cho-deung-hak-saeng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employee</td>
<td>중학교생 jong-eob-won, 학원 jig-won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>결 케우t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end of the month</td>
<td>월말 wol-mal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end of the year</td>
<td>연말 yeon-mal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>energy</td>
<td>기운 gi-un, 힘 him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(have no) energy</td>
<td>기운이 없다 gi-un-i cop-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(lacking in) energy</td>
<td>기문이 없다 gi-un-i cop-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineer</td>
<td>엔지니어 en-ji-ni-eo, 기술자 gi-sul-jja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td>공학 gong-hak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering school</td>
<td>공과대학 (공대) gong-kkwa-daehak (gong-dae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>영국 yeong-guk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>영어 yeong-co</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enter</td>
<td>들어가다 deul-eo-ga-da, 들어오다 deul-eo-o-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entrance</td>
<td>입구 ip-gu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envelope</td>
<td>편지봉투 pyeon-ji-bong-tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>especially</td>
<td>특별히 teuk-byeol-hi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>even if it is true</td>
<td>그래도 geu-rae-do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>even now</td>
<td>지금도 ji-geum-do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>even though</td>
<td>그래도 geu-rae-do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evening</td>
<td>저녁 jeo-nyeok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every day</td>
<td>매일 mae-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every month</td>
<td>매월 mae-wol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every week</td>
<td>매주 mae-ju</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every year</td>
<td>매년 mae-nyeo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>everyone</td>
<td>다들 da-deul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(general) examination</td>
<td>종합사 장 jong-hap-geom-sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get an examination</td>
<td>검사하다/받다 geom-sa-reul ha-da/bat-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(get a general) examination</td>
<td>종합검사를 하고/받다 jong-hap-geom-sa-reul ha-da/bat-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examine (in a hospital)</td>
<td>진찰을 하고/받다 jin-chal-eul ha-da/bat-da</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exchange</td>
<td>교환하다 gyo-hwan-ha-da,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exchange money</td>
<td>바꾸다 ba-ku-da, 바꾸다 ba-ku-da,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exchange rate</td>
<td>바꿔주다 ba-kuwo-ju-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exchanging currency</td>
<td>환전하다 hwan-jeon-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excited</td>
<td>환전하기 hwan-jeon-ha-gi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me....</td>
<td>신나다 sin-na-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exist</td>
<td>설레지마 sil-lye-ji-man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td>있다 it-da, 게시다 gye-si-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>나가는 곳 na-ga-neun got, 출구 chul-gu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>express mail</td>
<td>비싸다 bi-ssa-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external department</td>
<td>외과 oe-kkwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye</td>
<td>눈 nun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face</td>
<td>얼굴 eol-gul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facial impression</td>
<td>인상 in-sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(in) fact</td>
<td>사실은 sa-sil-eun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fahrenheit</td>
<td>화씨 hwa-ssi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>가을 ga-eul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family</td>
<td>식구 sik-gu, 가족 ga-jok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family members</td>
<td>식구 sik-gu, 가족 ga-jok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fan</td>
<td>선공기 seong-pung-gi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>멀다 meol-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare</td>
<td>요금 yo-geum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>빨르다 ppa-reu-da, 빨리 ppal-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father</td>
<td>아버지 a-beo-ji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law</td>
<td>장인어른 jang-in-eo-reun,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>시아버지 si-a-beo-nim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>아들 i-wol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fee</td>
<td>수수료 su-su-ryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed</td>
<td>먹이 meog-i-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fever</td>
<td>열 yeol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(have a) fever</td>
<td>열이 나는 yeol-i na-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifteen days</td>
<td>보름 bo-reum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifty</td>
<td>원 swin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>찾아 chat-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find money</td>
<td>돈을 잃다 don-eul-jup-da</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
fine arts  미술
finger 손가락
fire 불
fire station 소방서
fire truck 소방차
first 첫
first-class mail 항공 우편
first time 처음
fish 생선
fishing 낚시
fit 맞추다
fitting room 터미널
five 다섯
five days 오
floor 층
florist 화원
floss 치실
flower pattern 꽃무늬
flower shop 꽃원
flute 플라멘
play flute 플라멘 불다
follow 따라오다
food 음식
foot 발
on foot 걸어서
football 미식축구
play football 미식축구 하다
forget 잊어버리다
form 생기다
forty 마흔
four 넷
four days 나흘
four-way intersection 사거리
France 프랑스
French 프랑스어
French language 프랑스어
Friday 금요일
front 앞
full 가득
full of 가득하다
fun 재미있다
G game 게임
gate 문
in general 보통
German 독일어
German language 독일어
Germany 독일
get off 내리다
get up 일어나다
give give a present give money
Give money 받다
joy 만족하다
glass 와인
grapes 고무
gloves 장갑
go 가다
go back 되돌아가다
go directly 바로 가다
go out 나가다
go over 넘다
go straight 직진하다
going on well 잘 되다
good 고품질
play golf 골프
graduate school 대학원
graduate student 대학원생 dae-hag-won-saeng
grandchildren 손주 son-ju
grandfather 할아버지 hal-a-beo-ji
grandmother 할머니 hal-meo-ri
grandson 손자 son-ja
gray 회색 hoe-saek
green 초록색 cho-rok-saek
ground mail 일반우편 il-ban u-yeon
ground transportation 차 티는 곳 cha ta-neun got
grow 땅 tang
guest 손님 son-nim
guitar 기타 gi-ta
hair (back of head) 뒷머리 dwon-meo-ri
(front of head) 앞머리 am-meo-ri
(side of head) 양머리 yeom-meo-ri
long hair 긴 머리 gin meo-ri
short hair 짧은 머리 jialb-eun meo-ri
shoulder-length hair 단발머리 dan-bal meo-ri
soft hair 부드러운 머리 bu-deu-reo-un meo-ri
thick hair 벼룩한 머리 ppeot-ppeo-tan meo-ri
volume of hair 머리 속 meo-ri sut
hair color 머리색깔 meo-ri-saek-kkal
hair cream 헤어 크림 he-o keu-rim
hair cream/mousse gel 무스/젤리 mu-ssu/jel-li
hair mousse/gel put on hair mousse/igel 무스/젤리를 바르다 mu-ssu/jel-li-reul
put on hair mousse/gel
hair straightening 스프레이를 하다 seu-pyeo-re-i-reul ha-da

hair stylist 미용사 mi-yong-sa,
(get a) haircut 헤어 다이저너 he-o di-ja-i-neo
hairpin 머리핀 meo-ri-pin
hand 손 son
happy 기쁘다 gi-ppeu-da, 즐겁다 jeul-geop-da,
hard 힘들다 him-deul-da, 덜다 ttak-tta-ka-da
hard work 고생 go-saeng
hat 모자 mo-ja
have (to) not have 머리 meo-ri
head headache 머리 아프다 meo-ri-ga a-peu-da
health 건강 geon-gang
health insurance 건강보험 geon-gang-bo-heom
health insurance card 의료보험카드 ui-ryo-bo-heom-ka-deu
hear 듣다 deul-da
heard 듣다 deul-li-da
heavy 무겁다 mu-geop-da
help 도와주다 do-wa-ju-da,
help 도와 드리다 do-wa deu-ri-da

cannot help 할 수 없다 hal sue op-da
here 여기 yoe-gi
high 높다 nop-da
high school 고등학교 go-deung-hak-gu
high school student 고등학생 go-deung-hak-saeng
hip 엉덩이 eong-deong-i
history 역사학 eok-sa-hak
hold 잡다 an-tta
home 마다 deack (hak), 집 jip
hospital 병원 byeong-won
hospitalized 입원하다 ib-won-ha-da
hot 덥다 deop-da, 맛다 maep-da
hot become hot get hot
day 더워지다 deo-wo-jii-da
day 더워지다 deo-wo-jii-da
hot day 더운 날 deo-un nal
Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

**hour**
시간 si-gan

**house**
집 bip (hon.), 집 jip

**how**
어떻게 eo-tteo-ke

**How about ~**
어떻게 eo-tteo-se-yo

**How is it?**
어렇게 eo-tteo-se-yo

**how long/much/many?**
 얼마나 eol-ma-na

**how many?**
몇 개 myeoet-gae

**how much?**
 얼마나 eol-ma

**humanities, school of**
인문대학 (인문대) in-mun-dae-hak (in-mun-dae)

**humid**
고 Ivanka kkeun-kkeup-ha-da

**humidity**
습도 seup-do

**hundred**
백 baek

**hundred million**
억 eok

**hungry**
배가 고프다 bae-ga go-peu-da

**hurry**
급하다 geu-pa-da, 서두르다 soo-da-reu-da

**in a hurry**
급히 geu-pi

**hurt**
더치다 da-ch-da, 아프다 a-peu-da

**husband**
남편 nam-pyeon

I
나 na, 저 jeo (hum.)

**Ice**
얼음 eol-eum

**ice coffee**
네코피 naeng-keo-pi

**ice water**
냉수 naeng-su, 찬물 can-mul

**ID card**
신분증 sin-bun-jjeung

if
그래서 geu-reo-myeon

if not
아니면 an-de-myeon

**imagine, unable to**
상상이 안 된다 sang-sang-i an-doe-da

in
속 sok, 안 an

**increase**
상상하다 in-sang-ha-da

**increased**
상상되다 in-sang-doe-da

**indigestion**
소화불량 so-hwa-bul-lyang

**have indigestion**
소화가 안 돼다 so-hwa-ga an-doe-da

**indoor**
실내 sil-la-e

**get injected**
주사를 맞다 ju-sa-reul mat-da

**injured**
대치다 da-chi-da

**inside**
속 sok, 안 an

**put inside**
별다 neo-ta

**insurance card**
보험카드 bo-heom-ka-deu

interesting
재미있다 jae-mi-it-da

interestingly
재미있게 jae-mi-it-ge

**internal department**
내과 nac-kkwa

**intestine**
장 jang

**(have) intestinal trouble**
장염에 걸리다 jang-yeom-e geol-li-da

**iron**
다리미 da-ri-mi, 다림질하다 da-rim-jil-ha-da

**item**
항목 hang-mok, 개 gae

J
자켓 ja-ket

**jacket**
아키 ma-ki-da

**January**
일월 il-wol

**Japan**
일본 il-bon

**Japanese**
일본 사람 il-bon sa-rafn, 일본인 il-bon-in

**Japanese food**
일식 il-ssik, 일본음식 il-bon-eum-sik

**Japanese language**
일본어 il-bon-eo

**Japanese restaurant**
일식당 il-ssik-dang, 일본식당 il-bon-sik-dang

**jaywalk**
유단횡단을 한다 mu-dan hoeng-dan-eul ha-da

**job**
혈 ii, 직업 jip-eop

**jog**
조깅을 한다 jo-ging-eul ha-da

**jogging**
조깅 jio-ging

**journalist**
기자 gi-ja

**juice**
주스 ju-seu

**July**
칠월 chil-wol

**June**
여월 yu-wol

**junior high school**
중학교 jung-hak-gyo

**junior high school student**
중학생 jung-hak-saeng

**k**
그래서 geu-reo-myeon

**knee**
주름 mu-reup

**karaokeroom**
노래방 no-rae-bang

**kid**
아이 a-i

**kill**
죽이다 jae-i-da

**kimchi**
김치 gim-chi

**kindergarten**
유치원 yu-chi-won

**kindergarten student**
유치원생 yu-chi-won-saeng

**knee**
주름 mu-reup
### Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>알고요 알다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not know</td>
<td>모르요 모레요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>한국</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>한국인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean-</td>
<td>한국계</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean food</td>
<td>한식, 한국음식</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean language</td>
<td>한국어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean restaurant</td>
<td>한식당</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean won</td>
<td>원</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>언어학</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>늦다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>later</td>
<td>늦게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh</td>
<td>笑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laundry</td>
<td>빌래</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law school</td>
<td>법과대학</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law study</td>
<td>법학</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lawyer</td>
<td>변호사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay down</td>
<td>놓다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay someone down</td>
<td>놓히다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>layer</td>
<td>층</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>떠나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left</td>
<td>왼쪽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left turn</td>
<td>좌회전</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leg</td>
<td>다리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>빌려주다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>length</td>
<td>길이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let's do that</td>
<td>그저</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter</td>
<td>편지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter paper</td>
<td>편지지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>가볍다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td>좋아하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) not like</td>
<td>마음에 안 든다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>그 לדעת</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>이 때문에</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Listening | 듣다 |
| Literature | 문학 |
| Little | 조금 |
| Live | 살다 |
| Long | 길다 |
| Long time no see | 오래간만 |
| Look around | 구경하다 |
| Look for | 찾아보다 |
| Look good | 만족하다 |
| Look heavy | 냉동해 보이다 |
| Look soft | 부드러워 보이다 |
| Loose | 옷다 |
| Lose money | 돈을 잃다 |
| Lose | 잃다 |
| Lose money | 돈을 잃다 |
| Loose money | 잃어버리다 |
| Loud | 높이 |
| Loudly | 크게 |
| Low | 낮다 |
| Lucky | 행운이 |
| Lunch | 점심 |
| Lunch time | 점심시간 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M</th>
<th>메이저</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Magazine</td>
<td>잡지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail</td>
<td>우편</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registered mail</td>
<td>우편</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular mail</td>
<td>우편</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mailbox</td>
<td>우편함</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make</td>
<td>만들다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Man</td>
<td>남자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manner</td>
<td>예의</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Many</td>
<td>많다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>3월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marry</td>
<td>결혼하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Match well</td>
<td>어울리다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>수학</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Linguistics | 언어학 |
| Literature | 문학 |
| Little | 조금 |
| Live | 살다 |
| Long | 길다 |
| Long time no see | 오래간만 |
| Look around | 구경하다 |
| Look for | 찾아보따 |
| Look good | 만족하다 |
| Look heavy | 냉동해 보이다 |
| Look soft | 부드러워 보이다 |
| Loose | 옷다 |
| Lose money | 돈을 잃다 |
| Lose | 잃다 |
| Lose money | 잃어버리다 |
| Loud | 높이 |
| Loudly | 크게 |
| Low | 낮다 |
| Lucky | 행운이 |
| Lunch | 점심 |
| Lunch time | 점심시간 |

<p>| Magazine | 잡지 |
| Mail | 우편 |
| Registered mail | 우편 |
| Regular mail | 우편 |
| Mailbox | 우편함 |
| Make | 만들다 |
| Man | 남자 |
| Manner | 예의 |
| Many | 많다 |
| March | 3월 |
| Marry | 결혼하다 |
| Match well | 어울리다 |
| Mathematics | 수학 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most, the</td>
<td>제일 je-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>어머니 eo-meo-ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
<td>장모님 jang-mo-nim, 시어머님 si-eo-meo-nim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motorcycle</td>
<td>오토바이 o-to-ba-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>산 san</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain side</td>
<td>산 쪽 san sjok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>입 ip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouthwash</td>
<td>마우스위시 ma-u-seu-wo-si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move</td>
<td>이사하다 i-sa-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie</td>
<td>영화 yeong-hwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moving</td>
<td>이사 i-sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muffler</td>
<td>머도리 mok-do-ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muggy</td>
<td>끼근하다 kkeun-kkeun-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>museum</td>
<td>박물관 bang-mul-gwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td>음악 eum-ak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music school</td>
<td>음악대학 (음대) eum-ak-dae-hak (eum-dae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>내 nae, 제 je</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>성명 seong-myeong, 성함 seong-ham,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>이름 i-reum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>near</td>
<td>근처 geun-cheo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nearby</td>
<td>근처 geun-cheo, 열 yeop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neat and fresh</td>
<td>산뜻하다 san-teu-ta-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neck</td>
<td>목 mok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necktie</td>
<td>넥타이 nek-ta-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>필요하다 pil-yo-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need money</td>
<td>돈이 들다 don-i deul-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephew</td>
<td>남자조카 nam-ja-jo-ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>뉴질랜드 nyu-jil-laen-deu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealander</td>
<td>뉴질랜드인 nyu-jil-laen-deu-in,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>뉴질랜드 사람 nyu-jil-laen-deu sa-ram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newly</td>
<td>새로 sae-ro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newly released</td>
<td>새로 나오다 sae-ro na-o-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niece</td>
<td>어자조카 yeo-ja-jo-ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>night</td>
<td>밤 bam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for all night</td>
<td>밤새도록 bam-sae-do-rok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nine</td>
<td>구 gu, 아홉 a-hop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nine days</td>
<td>아홉나이 a-heu-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ninety</td>
<td>아흔 a-heun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

orange
order
organize
other people
out
outside
oval
overlapped
overpass
owner

package
dress pants
panty hose
parents
particularly
not particularly
pass away
passer-by
passport
pastor
patient
peacefully
pediatrics
be in a period
permanent
permanent wave
(by) oneself
open
opened
opening a bank account
(in my) opinion
ophthalmology
picture  
 take a picture  

put on  

quickly  

rain  

red  

relatively  

release  

reached (from a hospital)  

relieved  

request  

rice  

rice with mixed vegetables  

ride  

place to ride  

riding  

right  

right behind  

right side  

right turn  

ring  

ring ring... 

rinse out  

roughly  

Pusan (going to) Pusan
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>round</td>
<td>동그랗다 dong-geu-ra-mi, 원형 won-hyeong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(by) running</td>
<td>뛰어서 twi-eo-seo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runny nose</td>
<td>꽃을 kon-mul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a runny nose</td>
<td>꽃을 이니다 kon-mul-i na-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>러시아 reo-si-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>러시아 사람 reo-si-a sa-ram, 러시아인 reo-si-a-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russian language</td>
<td>러시아어 reo-si-a-eo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sad</td>
<td>속프다 seul-peu-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safety</td>
<td>안녕히 an-nyeong-hi, 안전하게 (an-jeon-ha-ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sale period</td>
<td>세일기간 se-ill-gi-gan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salesperson</td>
<td>떡원 jeom-won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salty</td>
<td>짜다 jja-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>same</td>
<td>같다 gat-da, 독 같다 tok gat-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Diego</td>
<td>샌디에이고 saen-di-e-i-go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>토요일 to-yo-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save money</td>
<td>돈을 맞기나 don-eul mat-gi-da, 지급하다 jeo-geum-ha-da, 예금하다 ye-geum-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scallion</td>
<td>파 pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scallion pancake</td>
<td>파전 pa-jeon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scared</td>
<td>무섭다 mu-seop-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scarf</td>
<td>목도리 mok-do-ri, 스카프 seu-ka-peu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>school year</td>
<td>학년 hang-nyeon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sciences, school of</td>
<td>자연학 (자연대) ja-yeon-da-e-hak (ja-yeon-da-e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sea</td>
<td>바다 ba-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seaside</td>
<td>바다 흥 ba-da jjok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seal</td>
<td>도장 do-jang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seat</td>
<td>자리 ja-ri, 좌석 jwa-seok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seat number</td>
<td>좌석번호 jwa-seok-beon-ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seat someone</td>
<td>앉히다 an-chi-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secretary</td>
<td>비서 bi-seo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>보다 bo-da, 보다 boep-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seen</td>
<td>보이다 bo-i-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>물다 pal-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>부치다 bu-chi-da, 보내다 bo-nae-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sender</td>
<td>보내는 사람 bo-nae-neun sa-ram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sending mail</td>
<td>편지 부치기 pyeon-ji bu-chi-gi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seoul</td>
<td>서울 seol-ul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>구월 gu-wol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serious</td>
<td>심하다 sim-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>service</td>
<td>서비스 sseo-bi-sseu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set</td>
<td>맞추다 mat-chu-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seven</td>
<td>일곱 il-gop, 톨 chil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seven days</td>
<td>이레 i-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seventy</td>
<td>일흔 ri-heun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-up (beverage)</td>
<td>사이다 sa-i-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>several</td>
<td>몇 가지 myeot ga-ji, 몇 myeot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>several days</td>
<td>여섯 myeo-chil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>severe</td>
<td>농하다 do-ka-da, 심하다 sim-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake</td>
<td>떨다 teol-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake off</td>
<td>떨다 teol-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shampoo</td>
<td>머리를 감에 meo-ri-reul gam-tta, 삼푸하다 syam-pu-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shape</td>
<td>모양 mo-yang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share</td>
<td>함께 쓰다 ham-kke sseu-da, 같이 쓰다 ga-chi sseu-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share a ride</td>
<td>승차 하다 hap-seung-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheet</td>
<td>엽 jang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ship</td>
<td>배 bae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shirt</td>
<td>셔츠 sseo-cheu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dress shirt</td>
<td>와이셔츠 wa-i-sseo-cheu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis/golf shirt</td>
<td>남방 nam-bang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoe store</td>
<td>신발가게 sin-bal-kka-ge, 야행정 yang-hwa-jeom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>신발 sin-bal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put on shoes</td>
<td>신기다 sin-gi-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shop</td>
<td>가게 ga-ge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shopping</td>
<td>소핑 syo-ping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go shopping</td>
<td>소핑가다 syo-ping-ga-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>짧다 jjalp-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shortly</td>
<td>짧게 jjalp-ge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoulder</td>
<td>어깨 eo-kkae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>보여 주다 bo-yeo ju-da</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 3: English-Korean Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>someone</td>
<td>누구 nu-gu, 누가 nu-ga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something</td>
<td>무엇 nu-eot, 워 mwo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sometime</td>
<td>언제 eon-je</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>어디 eo-di</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son</td>
<td>아들 a-deul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>song</td>
<td>노래 no-rae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son-in-law</td>
<td>사위 sa-wi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soon</td>
<td>긴방 geum-bang, 곧 got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sore throat, have a</td>
<td>목감기에 걸린다 mok-gam-gi-e geol-li-da, 목이 뜨하다 mog-i but-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sorry</td>
<td>죄송하다 joe-song-ha-da, 미안하다 mi-an-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soup</td>
<td>국 guk, 국물 gung-mul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sour</td>
<td>시다 si-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>스페인 seu-pe-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>스페인 사람 seu-pe-in sa-ram, 스페인인 seu-pe-in-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish language</td>
<td>스페인어 seu-pe-in-eo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>말하다 mal-ha-da, 말씀하시다 mal-sseum-ha-si-da, 특별한 teuk-byeoel-han</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>special</td>
<td>특별한 teuk-byeoel-dae-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>special care</td>
<td>특별마다 teuk-byeoel-dae-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>special day</td>
<td>오늘 날 mu-seun-nal, 특별한 날 teuk-byeoel-han nal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend money</td>
<td>쓰다 seu-da, 사용하다 sa-yong-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend time</td>
<td>통을 쓴다 don-eul seu-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spicy</td>
<td>맵다 map-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sports</td>
<td>운동 un-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sportsman</td>
<td>운동선수 un-dong-son-su</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spring</td>
<td>봄 bom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spy movie</td>
<td>为大家 영화 chc-ko-bo-yeong-hwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>square</td>
<td>정사각형 jeong-sa-ga-kyeong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stamp</td>
<td>우표 u-pyo, 도장 do-jang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put on a stamp</td>
<td>우표를 붙이다 u-pyo-reul bu-chi-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>시작하다 si-ja-ka-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>계시다 gye-si-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sticky</td>
<td>곤란하다 keun-kkeun-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>still</td>
<td>아직 a-jik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomach</td>
<td>배다 빌다 bae-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>배가 아프다 bae-ga a-peu-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on an empty stomach</td>
<td>공복에 gong-bog-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>셀다 seo-da, 셀레 주다 se-wo ju-da, 셀레 드리다 se-wo deu-ri-da,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop by</td>
<td>들려 보다 deul-leo-bo-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>store</td>
<td>가게 ga-ge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>story</td>
<td>술 cheung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>straight</td>
<td>똑바로 tok-ba-ro, 똑 jjuk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strange</td>
<td>이상하다 i-sang-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>street</td>
<td>길 gil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stressed</td>
<td>스트레스가 많다/밥이다 seu-teu-re-sseu-ga man-ta / ssa-i-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stripe pattern</td>
<td>즐무니 jul-mu-ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strong</td>
<td>강하다 gang-ha-da, 힘이 세다 him-i se-da, 독하다 do-ka-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>student</td>
<td>학생 hak-saeng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subway</td>
<td>지하철 ji-ja-cheol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suit</td>
<td>정장 jeong-jang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summer</td>
<td>여름 yeo-reum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>일요일 il-yo-il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supermarket</td>
<td>슈퍼마켓 syu-peo-ma-keet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sure, for</td>
<td>꼭 kkok, 확실히 hawk-sil-hi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Su-won</td>
<td>수원 su-won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweat</td>
<td>많 tam, 많이 나다 tam-i na-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweater</td>
<td>스웨터 seu-we-teo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweet</td>
<td>달다 dal-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>수영을 하다 su-yeong-eul ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>수영 su-yeong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming pool</td>
<td>수영장 su-yeong-jang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch</td>
<td>바꾸다 ba-ku-du-da, 바꿔 떠다 ba-kkwo-ju-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swollen</td>
<td>빗다 but-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>symptom</td>
<td>증상 jeung-sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablet</td>
<td>알약 al-lyak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take away</td>
<td>빼다 ppaet-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take care</td>
<td>모시다 mo-si-da, 손질하다 son-jil-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>빼다 beot-da, 빼다 ppaet-da, 풀다 pul-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take someone</td>
<td>모셔다 드리다 mo-syoo-da deu-ri-da, 모시고 가다 mo-si-go ga-da, 데리고 가다 de-ri-go ga-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take something</td>
<td>가지고 가다 ga-ji-go ga-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taken away</td>
<td>빼다 ppaet-gi-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk</td>
<td>말하다 mal-ha-da, 말씀 드리다 mal-sseum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deu-ri-da</td>
<td>스다 sseu-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tart</td>
<td>맛있게 mas-it-ge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tastily</td>
<td>맛있다 mass-it-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tasty</td>
<td>택시 taek-si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taxi</td>
<td>선생 seon-saeng, 선생님 seon-saeng-nim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teacher</td>
<td>사범대학 (사대) sa-beom-da-hak (sa-daeh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teacher education school</td>
<td>전화 jeon-hwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telephone</td>
<td>전화하다 jeon-hwa-ha-da, 전화 걸다 jeon-hwa geol-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telephone call</td>
<td>전화번호 jeon-hwa-jeon-ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telephone number</td>
<td>전화번호 jeon-hwa-jeon-ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>television (TV)</td>
<td>셀레비전 tel-le-bi-jeon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temperature</td>
<td>온도 on-do, 기온 gi-on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
<td>심 sip, 열 yeol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten days</td>
<td>열흘 yeol-heul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten thousand</td>
<td>만 man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tender</td>
<td>연하다 yeon-ha-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>테니스 te-ni-sseu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play tennis</td>
<td>테니스를 치다 te-ni-sseu-reul chi-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank</td>
<td>감사하다 gan-sa-ha-da, 고맙다 go-map-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thanks to (you)</td>
<td>덕분에 deok-bun-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>그 gau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that one</td>
<td>그 결로 geu-geol-lo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that over there</td>
<td>저 jae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that side</td>
<td>그 쪽 geu jik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that side over there</td>
<td>저 쪽 jae-jik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that's right</td>
<td>그렇게나 geu-geo-kun-na, 맞아요 maj-a-yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there</td>
<td>그 땅 geu-reom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over there</td>
<td>거기 geo-gi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>these days</td>
<td>요즘 yo-jeum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thick</td>
<td>굴다 (gulk-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>가늘다 (ga-neul-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things</td>
<td>올레 (mul-geon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things for elderly</td>
<td>노인용 (no-in-yong)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people</td>
<td>필요한 것 (pil-yo-han geot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things that are</td>
<td>옥이 마르다 (mog-i ma-reu-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>needed</td>
<td>쌓다 (seo-reun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thirsty</td>
<td>이 (i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thirty</td>
<td>이것은 (i-geot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this and that</td>
<td>천천히 (cheon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thousand</td>
<td>삼삼형 (sam, set)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>사흘 (sa-heul)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throat</td>
<td>목 (mok)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>목요일 (mog-yo-il)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>표 (pyo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tie</td>
<td>머리 (mac-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tile</td>
<td>타일 (ta-il)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>시간 (si-gan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have time</td>
<td>시간이 (i) 있다 (si-gan-i) it-da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next time</td>
<td>다음 번 (da-eum-beon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take time</td>
<td>끝까지 (geol-li-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three days</td>
<td>최근까지 (toe-gae-si-gan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>times</td>
<td>빈 (beon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tired</td>
<td>피곤하다 (pi-gon-ha-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>today</td>
<td>오늘 (o-neul)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toe</td>
<td>발가락 (bal-kka-rak)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>together</td>
<td>같이 (ga-chi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>내일 (nac-il)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day after</td>
<td>오래 (mo-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>일부 (neo-mu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too</td>
<td>이 (i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>이가 아프다 (i-ga a-peu-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toothache, have a</td>
<td>치약 (chi-yak)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toothpaste</td>
<td>위 (wi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top</td>
<td>빗빛하다 (ppeot-ppeo-ta-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tough</td>
<td>수건 (su-geon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towel</td>
<td>머리를 말리다 (meo-ri-reul ma-li-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a towel-dry</td>
<td>동네 (dong-ne)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>town</td>
<td>장난감 (jang-nan-kkam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toy</td>
<td>장난감 가게 (jang-nan-kkam ga-ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toy store</td>
<td>장난감 가게 (jang-nan-kkam ga-ge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traffic signal</td>
<td>신호등 (sin-ho-deung)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train</td>
<td>기차 (gi-chya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transfer</td>
<td>길이 아닌다 (gal-a-ta-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place to transfer</td>
<td>길이 아닌다 (gal-a-ta-neun got)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel</td>
<td>여행 (yeo-haeng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triangle</td>
<td>정삼각형 (jeong-sam-ge-kyeong)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trillion</td>
<td>조 (jo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trim</td>
<td>다들다 (da-deum-tta)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trouble</td>
<td>문제 (mun-je)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have trouble</td>
<td>큰일 (keun-il na-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td>트럼펫 (reu-reom-pet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play trumpet</td>
<td>트럼펫을 불다 (reu-reom-pes-eul bul-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try</td>
<td>해 보다 (hae bo-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try on (clothes)</td>
<td>입어 보다 (ib-bo-bo-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>휴일 (hwa-yo-il)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn</td>
<td>돌리다 (dol-li-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make a left turn</td>
<td>좌회전하다 (jaehoe-jeon-ha-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make a right turn</td>
<td>우회전하다 (hae-jeon-ha-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn left</td>
<td>왼쪽으로 가다 (oen-jjog-ge-ro ga-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn on</td>
<td>들어 놓다 (teul-eo no-ta)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn right</td>
<td>오른쪽으로 가다 (o-reun-jjog-ge-ro ga-da)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twenty</td>
<td>스무 (seu-mul)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twenty days</td>
<td>스무 날 (seu-mu-nal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>두 (duul, i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two days</td>
<td>아들 (han i-teul jeon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>어머 (co-meo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uh uh (no)</td>
<td>어머 (co-meo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle</td>
<td>삼촌 (sam-chon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle</td>
<td>큰아버지 (keun-a-ba-eo-ji)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle</td>
<td>작은 아버지 (jag-eun a-ba-eo-ji)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle</td>
<td>외삼촌 (oe-sam-chon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle</td>
<td>고모부 (go-mo-bu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle</td>
<td>모모부 (moo-mo-bu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>under</td>
<td>아래 (a-rae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underneath</td>
<td>아래 (a-rae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underpass</td>
<td>일 (mit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underpass</td>
<td>일 (mit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underwear</td>
<td>제도 (ji-ha-do)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underwear</td>
<td>속옷 (soog-ot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undress</td>
<td>벗다 (beot-da)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
undress someone: 벗기다 beot-gi-da
university: 대학 dae-hak-gyo
university street: 대학로 dae-hang-no
untie: 풀다 pul-da, 고르다 kkeu-reu-da
unusual: 이상하다 i-sang-ha-da
up: 위 wi
us: 우리 u-ri, 저희 jeo-hi
use: 사용하다 sa-yong-ha-da, 쓰다 sseu-da
used: 쓰이다 sseu-i-da

vacation: 방학 bang-hak, 휴가 hyu-ga
very: 아주 a-ju
videotape: 비디오 bi-di-o
village: 동네 dong-ne
viola: 비올라 vi-ol-la-reul kyeo-da
violon: 바이올린 va-i-ol-in
play violin: 바이올린을 펼치다 va-i-ol-in-eul kyeo-da

wash hair: 머리 감다 meo-ri gam-tta
wash one's face: 세수하다 se-su-reul ha-da
wash one's hands/feet: 손/발을 씻다 son/bal-eul ssit-da
wash out: 빈손하다 rin-seu ha-da, 헐구다 heng-gu-da
washing machine: 세탁기 se-tak-gi
watch (noun): 시계 si-ge
watch (verb): 보다 bo-da
watch a movie: 영화 보다 yeong-hwa bo-da
watch a videotape: 비디오를 보다 yi-di-o-reul bo-da
watch repair store: 시계 망 si-ge ppang
watch TV: 달래비전을 보다 tel-le-bi-jeon-eul bo-da
water: 물 mul
watermelon: 수박 su-bak

way: by the way: 그런데 geu-reon-de
on the way: 증간에 jung-gan-e, 도중에 do-jung-e

we: 우리 u-ri, 저희 jeo-hi
weak: 약하다 ya-ka-da
wear: 입다 ip-da, 입어 보다 ib-eo-bo-da,

weather forecast: 날씨 예보 pal-ge-bo
Wednesday: 수요일 su-yo-il
week: 주 ju

Western food: 양식 yang-sik
Western liquor: 양주 yang-ju
Western restaurant: 양식당 yang-sik-dang
wet: 젖다 jeot-da
wet towel: 물수건 mul-ssu-geon
wrestle (verb) 레슬링을 하다 re-seul-ling-eul ha-da
wrestling 레슬링 re-seul-ling
write 쓰다 sseu-da, 써주다 sseu ju-da
write a reply 답장을 쓴다 dap-jang-eul sseu-da
writer 작가 jak-ga
written 써 있다 sseu it-da

Y
year 년 nyeon
last year 작년 jang-nyeon
next year 내년 nac-nyeon
this year 금년 geum-nyeon, 올해 ol-hae
next year 내후년 nea-hu-nyeon
year after 내년 nea-hu-nyeon
year before 작년 jae-jae-nyeon
(a) while ago 노력색 no-ran-saoek, 노란 no-ran,
(light) yellow 노란색 no-ran-saoek, 노란 no-ran,

yes 네 ne, 예 ye
yesterday 어제 eo-je
day before 그저께 geu-jeo-ke, 그제 geu-je
yet 아직도 a-jik-do, 아직 a-jik
young 여러분 sseo ju-da, 여러분 sseo ju-da

Z
zero 공 gong, 영 yeong
zip code 우편번호 u-pyeon-beon-ho
CD TRACK LIST

DISC ONE

1. Alphabet and Pronunciation Guide

Lesson One

2. Patterns
3. Model Conversations 1
4. Model Conversations 2
5. Model Conversations 3
6. Vocabulary

Lesson Two

7. Patterns
8. Model Conversations 1
9. Model Conversations 2
10. Model Conversations 3
11. Model Conversations 4
12. Vocabulary

Lesson Three

13. Patterns
14. Model Conversations 1
15. Model Conversations 2
16. Model Conversations 3
17. Vocabulary
Lesson Four

18. Patterns
19. Model Conversations 1
20. Model Conversations 2
21. Model Conversations 3
22. Vocabulary

Lesson Five

23. Patterns
24. Model Conversations 1
25. Model Conversations 2
26. Model Conversations 3
27. Vocabulary

Lesson Six

28. Patterns
29. Model Conversations 1
30. Model Conversations 2
31. Model Conversations 3
32. Vocabulary

Lesson Seven

33. Patterns
34. Model Conversations 1
35. Model Conversations 2
36. Model Conversations 3
37. Vocabulary

Lesson Eight

1. Patterns
2. Model Conversations 1
3. Model Conversations 2
4. Model Conversations 3
5. Model Conversations 4
6. Vocabulary

Lesson Nine

7. Patterns
8. Model Conversations 1
9. Model Conversations 2
10. Model Conversations 3
11. Vocabulary

Lesson Ten

12. Patterns
13. Model Conversations 1
14. Model Conversations 2
15. Model Conversations 3
16. Vocabulary

Lesson Eleven

17. Patterns
18. Model Conversations 1
19. Model Conversations 2
20. Model Conversations 3
21. Vocabulary
Lesson Twelve

22. Patterns
23. Model Conversations 1
24. Model Conversations 2
25. Model Conversations 3
26. Vocabulary